

# ENGLISH

THIRD PRIMARY

FIRST TERM

**2026**





# Table of Contents

## Introduction Let's Remember

8

★ Check and Go! **9**

★ Reading Skills **11**

★ Writing Skills **15**

## Module 1

|                                     |    |                               |    |
|-------------------------------------|----|-------------------------------|----|
| <b>Unit 1</b> Let's Learn Together! | 22 | <b>Unit 2</b> My Family and I | 58 |
| Lesson 1                            | 23 | Lesson 1                      | 59 |
| Lesson 2                            | 29 | Lesson 2                      | 64 |
| Lesson 3                            | 35 | Lesson 3                      | 70 |
| Lesson 4                            | 43 | Lesson 4                      | 76 |
| • Unit (1) Review                   | 50 | • Unit (2) Review             | 81 |
| • Unit (1) Dictation                | 52 | • Unit (2) Dictation          | 82 |
| • Unit (1) Writing Corner           | 53 | • Unit (2) Writing Corner     | 83 |
| • Student's Book Corner             | 54 | • Student's Book Corner       | 84 |
| • Unit (1) Test Yourself            | 55 | • Unit (2) Test Yourself      | 85 |
| • Unit (1) Al-Azhar Corner          | 57 | • Unit (2) Al-Azhar Corner    | 87 |
|                                     |    | • Al-Adwaa Revision - October | 88 |
|                                     |    | • Al-Adwaa Tests - October    | 90 |

## Module 2

|                              |    |     |
|------------------------------|----|-----|
| <b>Unit 3</b> New Adventures | 94 |     |
| Lesson 1                     |    | 95  |
| Lesson 2                     |    | 101 |
| Lesson 3                     |    | 108 |
| Lesson 4                     |    | 114 |
| • Unit (3) Review            |    | 118 |
| • Unit (3) Dictation         |    | 120 |
| • Unit (3) Writing Corner    |    | 121 |
| • Student's Book Corner      |    | 122 |
| • Unit (3) Test Yourself     |    | 123 |
| • Unit (3) Al-Azhar Corner   |    | 125 |







### Module 3

|                                |                            |            |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|------------|
| <b>Unit 4</b>                  | <b>Let's Tell Stories!</b> | <b>126</b> |
| Lesson 1                       |                            | 127        |
| Lesson 2                       |                            | 135        |
| Lesson 3                       |                            | 141        |
| • Unit (4) Review              |                            | 144        |
| • Unit (4) Dictation           |                            | 145        |
| • Unit (4) Writing Corner      |                            | 146        |
| • Student's Book Corner        |                            | 147        |
| • Unit (4) Test Yourself       |                            | 148        |
| • Unit (4) Al-Azhar Corner     |                            | 150        |
| • Al-Adwaa Revision - November |                            | 151        |
| • Al-Adwaa Tests - November    |                            | 153        |

|                            |                           |            |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|------------|
| <b>Unit 5</b>              | <b>Together Is Better</b> | <b>157</b> |
| Lesson 1                   |                           | 158        |
| Lesson 2                   |                           | 163        |
| Lesson 3                   |                           | 171        |
| Lesson 4                   |                           | 176        |
| • Unit (5) Review          |                           | 180        |
| • Unit (5) Dictation       |                           | 181        |
| • Unit (5) Writing Corner  |                           | 182        |
| • Student's Book Corner    |                           | 183        |
| • Unit (5) Test Yourself   |                           | 184        |
| • Unit (5) Al-Azhar Corner |                           | 186        |

|               |                      |            |
|---------------|----------------------|------------|
| <b>Unit 6</b> | <b>Dare to Dream</b> | <b>187</b> |
| Lesson 1      |                      | 188        |
| Lesson 2      |                      | 194        |
| Lesson 3      |                      | 200        |
| Lesson 4      |                      | 203        |

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| • Unit (6) Review          | 206 |
| • Unit (6) Dictation       | 208 |
| • Unit (6) Writing Corner  | 209 |
| • Student's Book Corner    | 210 |
| • Unit (6) Test Yourself   | 211 |
| • Unit (6) Al-Azhar Corner | 213 |

|                         |     |                    |            |
|-------------------------|-----|--------------------|------------|
| ★ <b>Final Revision</b> |     |                    | <b>214</b> |
| Revision on Unit 1      | 215 | Revision on Unit 5 | 235        |
| Revision on Unit 2      | 220 | Revision on Unit 6 | 240        |
| Revision on Unit 3      | 225 | Final Tests        | 248        |
| Revision on Unit 4      | 230 |                    |            |

|                             |  |            |
|-----------------------------|--|------------|
| ★ <b>Tapescripts</b>        |  | <b>288</b> |
| ★ <b>Dictation Copybook</b> |  | <b>293</b> |







## Let's Remember

هذا الجزء تأسيسي يهدف إلى تنمية مهارات القراءة والكتابة لدى الطالب.

**1** Check and Go!

**2** Reading Skills

**3** Writing Skills





## Section 1: Listening

1



Listen and number the pictures: استمع ورقم الصور:

5

1 van

2 star

3 hand

4 five

5 frog



## Section 2: Vocabulary

2

Look, read, and complete: انظروا، اقرأوا وأكملوا:

4

(cows - arms - ten - bus)

1



I can see a .....

2



I'm .....

3



There are three .....

4



I have two .....

## Section 3: Grammar

3

Read and choose: اقرأوا واختروا:

4

1 This (is - are) my cousin.

2 Hello! (He's - I'm) Hana.

3 Is there a (trees - tree)?

4 Fish don't (has - have) legs.



## Section 4: Reading

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 3

Hi! I'm Omar and this is my family. I live in Giza. We visit the Pyramids on the weekend. I see camels. Camels are big.

A Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Omar's family visit the (zoo – Pyramids – park) on the weekend.
- 2 Camels are (short – small – big).

B Answer the following question:

- 3 Where does Omar live?

## Section 5: Writing

5 Reorder to make sentences: أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً: 3

- 1 swim – I – can.
- 2 is – This – my – grandfather.
- 3 don't – Snakes – legs – have.

6 Look and write THREE sentences using the following guiding elements: 6

انظر واكتب ثلاث جمل باستخدام العناصر المساعدة الآتية:

(vet – helps – animals)



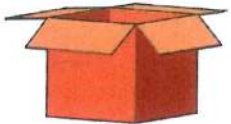


# Reading Skills



## Consonants

تهدف هذه الجزئية إلى تحسين مهارات القراءة من خلال الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح للأصوات.

|                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Bb /b/                                                                              | Cc /k/                                                                              | Dd /d/                                                                              | Ff /f/                                                                                | Gg /g/                                                                                | Hh /h/                                                                                |
|    |    |    |      |    |    |
| bag                                                                                 | cat                                                                                 | dog                                                                                 | fig                                                                                   | game                                                                                  | hen                                                                                   |
| Jj /dʒ/                                                                             | Kk /k/                                                                              | Ll /l/                                                                              | Mm /m/                                                                                | Nn /n/                                                                                | Pp /p/                                                                                |
|    |    |    |      |    |    |
| jam                                                                                 | kite                                                                                | log                                                                                 | mop                                                                                   | net                                                                                   | pen                                                                                   |
| Qq /kw/                                                                             | Rr /r/                                                                              | Ss /s/                                                                              | Tt /t/                                                                                | Vv /v/                                                                                | Ww /w/                                                                                |
|  |  |  |    |  |  |
| queen                                                                               | rat                                                                                 | sun                                                                                 | tub                                                                                   | van                                                                                   | wet                                                                                   |
| Xx /ks/                                                                             | Yy /j/                                                                              |                                                                                     | Zz /z/                                                                                |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
|  |  |                                                                                     |  |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
| box                                                                                 | yo-yo                                                                               |                                                                                     | zebra                                                                                 |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |

**Checkpoint** Circle the odd word that begins with a different sound:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة التي تبدأ بصوت مختلف:

① ball – bat – cat – bird

② dog – door – duck – bee

③ fan – kite – key – king

④ lemon – lion – sun – lamp

⑤ jam – jar – zebra – jug

⑥ pen – book – pencil – pan



## Short Vowels

| Short (a)<br>/æ/      | Short (e)<br>/e/       | Short (i)<br>/ɪ/      | Short (o)<br>/ɒ/      | Short (u)<br>/ʌ/       |
|-----------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| ba /bæ/<br><b>bag</b> | be /be/<br><b>bed</b>  | bi /bɪ/<br><b>bin</b> | bo /bɒ/<br><b>box</b> | cu /kʌ/<br><b>cup</b>  |
| ca /kæ/<br><b>cat</b> | he /he/<br><b>hen</b>  | di /dɪ/<br><b>dig</b> | do /dɒ/<br><b>dog</b> | fu /fʌ/<br><b>fun</b>  |
| fa /fæ/<br><b>fan</b> | je /dʒe/<br><b>jet</b> | fi /fɪ/<br><b>fig</b> | ho /hɒ/<br><b>hot</b> | ju /dʒʌ/<br><b>jug</b> |
| ma /mæ/<br><b>man</b> | le /le/<br><b>leg</b>  | mi /mɪ/<br><b>mix</b> | lo /lɒ/<br><b>log</b> | nu /nʌ/<br><b>nut</b>  |
| va /væ/<br><b>van</b> | te /te/<br><b>ten</b>  | si /sɪ/<br><b>six</b> | po /pɒ/<br><b>pot</b> | su /sʌ/<br><b>sun</b>  |

✓ **Checkpoint** Write the missing vowels: اكتب الحروف المتحركة الناقصة:



c-t



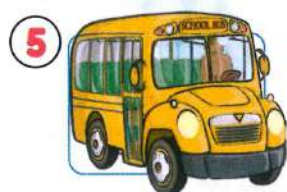
d-g



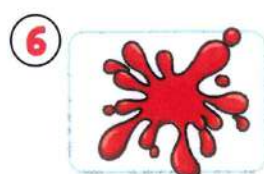
j-m



m-p



b-s



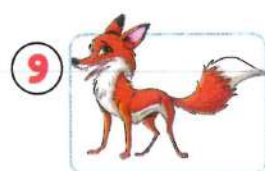
r-d



c-n



f-n



f-x



s\_n



s-x

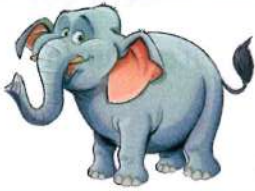


l-g



## Digraphs

• الحروف المركبة (Digraphs) تتكون من حرفين، لكل حرف منهما صوت مستقل ولكن عند اجتماعهما يصدران صوتًا مختلفًا تمامًا.

| th /θ/ ث                                                                                       | sh /ʃ/ ش                                                                           | ch /tʃ/ تش                                                                          | ph /f/ ف                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| th /θ/<br>    |   |   |   |
| three                                                                                          | fish                                                                               | cheese                                                                              | phone                                                                                |
|               |   |   |   |
| thumb                                                                                          | dish                                                                               | chair                                                                               | photo                                                                                |
| th /ð/ ذ<br> |  |  |  |
| brother                                                                                        | ship                                                                               | chicken                                                                             | elephant                                                                             |



Checkpoint

1. Look and match:

انظر وصل :

1 

ph

2 

th

3 

sh

4 

ch

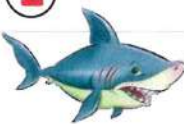
2. Choose and write:

اختر واكتب:

1 

ch / sh

— — eese

2 

th / sh

— — ark

3 

ph / sh

— — oto

4 

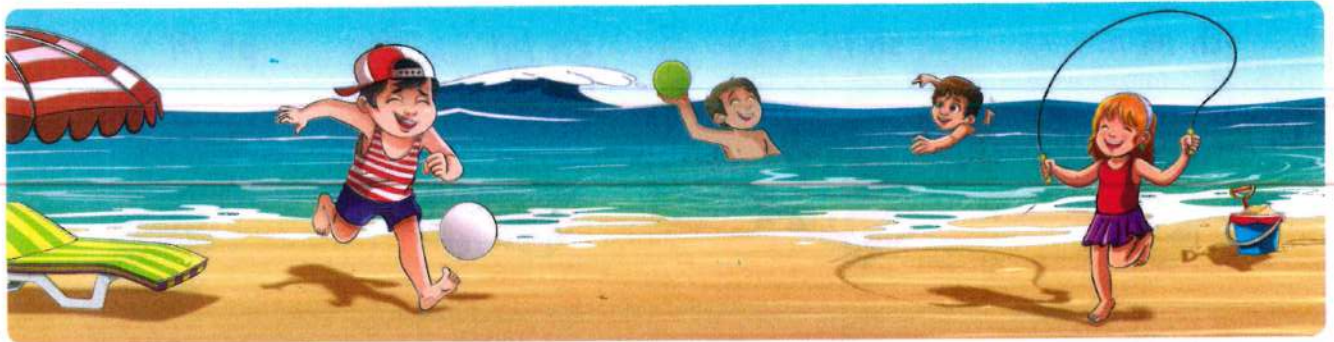
sh / ch

— — icken



## Reading Comprehension

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: Read the text and answer the questions:



• My name is Ahmed. I go to the beach with my family. Hazem can kick the ball. Hana can skip. Ali can swim. It's sunny today. We are happy.

A

Choose the correct answer:

- ① Hazem can (kick – jump) the ball.
- ② It's (rainy – sunny) today.

! Take care

- ① ركز على الكلمات الأساسية key words كأسماء الشخصيات والأفعال الأساسية Names and main verbs.
- ② ركز على الكلمات الوصفية descriptive words التي تأتي غالباً بعد verb to be.
- ③ تستخدم أداة الاستفهام Where للسؤال عن المكان.

B

Answer the following question:

- ③ Where does Ahmed go? He goes to the beach.

✓ Checkpoint Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I am Zein. Today is my birthday party. I am ten years old. I have a big cake. My friends come to the party. We all are happy.



A

Choose the correct answer:

- ① Zein is (one – ten) years old.
- ② Zein has a (big – small) cake.
- ③ We are (happy – sad).

B

Answer the following question:

- ④ Who comes to the party? .....

Take care ! تستخدم أداة الاستفهام Who للسؤال عن الأشخاص.



# Writing Skills

## 1. Subject Pronouns:

ضمائر الفاعل:



**Remember**

تستخدم ضمائر الفاعل للإشارة إلى الأشخاص دون استخدام أسمائهم.

e.g. - Adam is tall. He is tall.



I



You



He



She



It



We



You



They



**Checkpoint**

1. Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(He - I - We - You - She)

1



..... am Ben.

2



..... is a girl.

3



..... is a boy.

4



..... are friends.

5



..... are reading.

## 2. Read and match with the correct subject pronouns:

اقرأ وصل بضمائر الفاعل المناسبة:

1

Ali

It

2

Hana

They

3

The cat

He

4

My sister and I

We

5

He and his friends

She



## 2. Verb to be:

فعل يكون:

**Remember** يختلف شكل verb to be وفقًا للفاعل، سواء المفرد أو الجمع.

I

am

He

She

It

We

You

They

is

are

e.g.



I **am** a teacher.



She **is** old.



They **are** friends.



**Checkpoint**

Color the correct verb form:

لوّن الشكل الصحيح للفعل:

- ① I    am    is    are in grade three.
- ② He    am    is    are tall.
- ③ You    am    is    are happy.
- ④ It    am    is    are cute.
- ⑤ We    am    is    are friends.
- ⑥ She    am    is    are old.
- ⑦ My friends    am    is    are sad.
- ⑧ The dog    am    is    are hungry.
- ⑨ I    am    is    are eight years old.
- ⑩ My brother    am    is    are young.

### 3. The Present Simple Tense:

زمن المضارع البسيط:

#### Usage:

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات روتينية متكررة (routines) أو حقائق معروفة (facts).

**A**

#### Affirmative form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I / We / They / You / اسم جمع + (inf.) مصدر الفعل .....

e.g.



I **wake** up in the morning.  
(routine) عاده متكررة



Animals **live** in the jungle.  
(fact) حقيقة

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + s / es / ies .....

e.g.



She **plays** tennis on the weekends.



He **does** homework every day.



#### Checkpoint

#### Read and choose:

اقرأ واختر:

- 1 I (play – plays) tennis every Friday.
- 2 Mona (eats – eat) breakfast early.
- 3 He (clean – cleans) his room at night.
- 4 We (read – reads) English books.
- 5 Girls (wears – wear) nice dresses.
- 6 Ahmed (goes – go) to school every day.
- 7 Nour (cook – cooks) dinner in the evening.
- 8 The cat (drinks – drink) milk.
- 9 They (play – plays) in the garden every Friday.
- 10 I (wash – washes) my hands every day.



## B Negative form:

صيغة النفي:

I / We / They / You / اسم جمع + **don't** + (inf.) مصدر الفعل .....

e.g.



I **don't like** coffee.



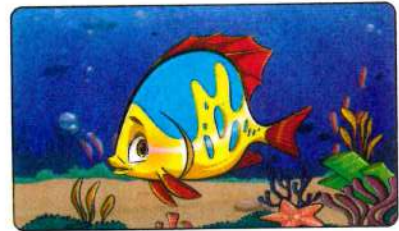
We **don't play** in the park.

He / She / It / اسم جمع + **doesn't** + (inf.) مصدر الفعل .....

e.g.



She **doesn't eat** vegetables.



The fish **doesn't fly**.

✓ **Checkpoint** Read and choose: ..... اقرأ واختر:

- ① She (**don't wash** – **doesn't wash**) the dishes at night.
- ② He (**don't run** – **doesn't run**) in the park.
- ③ I (**doesn't cooks** – **don't cook**) dinner.
- ④ Omar and Lama (**doesn't grow** – **don't grow**) mangoes.
- ⑤ They (**doesn't go** – **don't go**) to bed late.
- ⑥ Hend (**don't go** – **doesn't go**) to school on Friday.
- ⑦ We (**doesn't watch** – **don't watch**) TV on school days.
- ⑧ My brother (**don't like** – **doesn't like**) oranges.
- ⑨ The horse (**don't fly** – **doesn't fly**).
- ⑩ Ali (**doesn't eat** – **don't eat**) fries.

#### 4. Sentence Formation and Punctuation:

تكوين الجملة وعلامات الترقيم:



#### Remember

تتكون الجملة البسيطة من فاعل وفعل ومفعول (المفعول هو الذي يقع عليه الفعل).  
تبدأ الجملة بحرف كبير Capital letter وتنتهي بنقطة Period (Full stop).



Subject

Verb

Object

She → plays → the piano.



They → draw → a picture.



#### Checkpoint

#### 1. Reorder to make sentences:

أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

تذكر علامات الترقيم نهاية كل جملة.

① likes – Sara – apples.

② is – The – sky – blue.

③ basketball – plays – Ali.

④ fish – eats – The – cat.

⑤ today – It's – hot.

⑥ is – Mom – a nurse.

#### 2. Look and write a sentence under each picture using the following guiding elements:

انظر واكتب جملة أسفل كل صورة باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

①



(The girl – wears)

②



(The dog – sleeps)



## Let's Practice on Writing

ممتاز! يمكنك الآن التدريب على كتابة فقرة كاملة بطريقة صحيحة باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة.

Guiding words: (toy – soft – brown – love)

1 Write the topic sentence.

حدد الشيء / الشخص الذي تتكلم عنه أو  
تريد وصفه.

3 Write the closing sentence.

قم بوصف رأيك أو شعورك عنه.



2 Add details.

أضف تفاصيل مثل شكله، لونه أو شيء يميزه.

4 Check punctuation.

تبدأ الجملة بحرف كبير  
وتنتهي بنقطة (full stop).

5 Check grammar and spelling.

تأكد من كتابة الكلمات بشكل صحيح واستخدام زمن موحد.

My **favorite toy** is the teddy bear. It is **soft**. It is **brown**. I **love** my toy.

Write a paragraph of FIFTEEN (15) words using the guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

(mom – tall – teacher – love)

Remember:

1 Write the topic sentence.

3 Write the closing sentence.



2 Add Details.

4 Check spelling, grammar, and punctuation marks.





# Module 1

Unit 1 Let's Learn Together!

Unit 2 My Family and I



# Unit 1

## Let's Learn Together!

هيا نتعلم معًا



### Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

#### Listening

- respond appropriately to common greetings in a variety of classroom contexts. - يجيب بشكل مناسب على التحيات الشائعة في سياقات متنوعة في الفصل.
- follow basic classroom instructions during teacher-led activities. - يتبع تعليمات الفصل الأساسية أثناء الأنشطة التي يقودها المعلم.
- identify simple descriptive sentences about people in short listening texts. - يتعرف على الجمل الوصفية البسيطة عن الأشخاص في النصوص المسموعة القصيرة.
- recognize the the digraph "wh" and related words during structured listening tasks. - يتعرف على التركيب الحرفي "wh" والكلمات المرتبطة به أثناء مهام الاستماع المنظمة.

#### Speaking

- use common greetings in everyday conversations. - يستخدم التحيات الشائعة في المحادثات اليومية.
- use simple phrases for everyday classroom use. - يستخدم عبارات بسيطة للاستخدام اليومي في الفصل.
- describe daily routines using simple sentences and time expressions. - يصف الروتين اليومي باستخدام جمل بسيطة وتعابير زمنية.
- use simple sentences to describe oneself and others. - يستخدم جملًا بسيطة لوصف نفسه والآخرين.
- pronounce correctly the digraph "wh" in common English words. - ينطق التركيب الحرفي "wh" بشكل صحيح في كلمات إنجليزية شائعة.

#### Reading

- read simple sentences and short dialogs about greetings, describing others, and daily routines. - يقرأ جملًا بسيطة وحوارات قصيرة عن التحيات، ووصف الآخرين، والروتين اليومي.
- interpret phrases related to basic classroom rules. - يفسر العبارات المتعلقة بالقواعد الأساسية في الفصل.

#### Writing

- write full sentences describing others and daily routines using the present simple tense. - يكتب جملًا كاملة تصف الآخرين والروتين اليومي باستخدام زمن المضارع البسيط.



## Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say: \_\_\_\_\_ استمع، أشر وقل:

## Greetings التحيات



Hello!  
أهلاً!



Good morning!  
صباح الخير!



Nice to meet you.  
سعيد بلقاءك.



See you later!  
أراك لاحقاً!

## Extra Vocabulary

|           |                       |         |         |         |        |
|-----------|-----------------------|---------|---------|---------|--------|
| Goodbye!  | إلى اللقاء!           | How...? | كيف...؟ | fine    | بخير   |
| thank you | شكراً لك              | name    | اسم     | How old | كم عمر |
| Primary 3 | الصف الثالث الابتدائي | nice    | رائع    | Egypt   | مصر    |

## Verbs

meet

يقابل

see

يرى

## ▶ Listening and speaking: \_\_\_\_\_

Student A: Good morning, what is your name?

صباح الخير، ما اسمك؟

Student B: My name is Lina. Nice to meet you.

اسمي لينا، سعيدة بلقاءك.

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer: \_\_\_\_\_ اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

- 1 My (name – number) is Sama.
- 2 Nice to (play – meet) you.
- 3 See (you – me) later.
- 4 I say (good night – good morning) to my father in the morning.



## Language Notes

• عندما تسأل عن حال شخص ما: —————

A: How are you?

كيف حالك؟

B: I am fine, thank you.

أنا بخير، شكرًا لك.

• عندما تقابل شخصًا جديدًا: —————

Nice to meet you!

سعيد بلقائك!

• عندما تقابل أحدًا بالصباح: —————

Good morning!

صباح الخير!

• عندما تقول إلى اللقاء: —————

See you later.

أراك لاحقًا.

• لتقديم نفسك: —————

My name is .....

اسمى .....

I am .....

أنا أكون .....

I am from Egypt.

أنا من مصر.

I am (العمر) years old.

أنا عندي (العمر).

I am in primary 3.

أنا في الصف الثالث الابتدائي.



**Checkpoint**

**Read and complete:** —————

اقرأ وأكمل:

(fine – Nice – you – meet)

① Omar: How are ..... ?

② Amr: I'm ....., thank you.

③ Omar: Nice to ..... you.

④ Amr: ..... to meet you, too.



# Meeting a New Friend

مقابلة صديق جديد



Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:



Sara: Hello!

أهلاً!

Lina: Good morning!

صباح الخير!



Sara: How are you?

كيف حالك؟

Lina: I am fine, thank you.

How are you?

أنا بخير شكراً لك. كيف حالك؟



Sara: I'm fine too, thank you.

What's your name?

أنا بخير أيضاً، شكراً لك. ما اسمك؟

Lina: My name is Lina.

What's your name?

(أنا) أسمى لينا. ما اسمك؟



Sara: My name is Sara.

(أنا) اسمي سارة.

Lina: How old are you?

كم عمرك؟



Sara: I am 8 years old! I am in primary 3.

عمري ثمانى سنوات! أنا فى الصف الثالث الابتدائى.

Lina: Nice to meet you, Sara!

سعيدة بلقاؤك، يا سارة!



Sara: Nice to meet you too, Lina!

سعيدة بلقاؤك أيضاً، لينا!

Lina: See you later!

أراك لاحقاً!



Sara: Goodbye!

إلى اللقاء!



Checkpoint

Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(eight – name – meet – primary)

① Hello! My ..... is Lina.

② I am in ..... 3.

③ I am ..... years old.

④ Nice to ..... you.



# Homework Time

ذاكر الكلمات حتى  
تتمكن من تسميعها في  
نهاية الوحدة  
في صفحة 52.

▶ Look and write: \_\_\_\_\_ انظر واكتب:



Hello!

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'Hello!'.



Good morning!

Handwriting practice lines for the phrase 'Good morning!'.



See you later!

Handwriting practice lines for the phrase 'See you later!'.



Nice to meet you.

Handwriting practice lines for the phrase 'Nice to meet you.'.





1

① Hello! My ..... is Yara.

- ② ..... to meet you, Ali.

- ③ A: ..... old are you? B: I'm eight.

- ④ A: How are you? B: I am fine, .....

- ⑤ I am from .....

- ⑥ When I meet a/an ..... friend, I say, "Nice to meet you." Super Question

- 2** Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

**(school – friend – old – primary)**

Hello! I am Nada. I am eight years <sup>(1)</sup> ..... I am in <sup>(2)</sup> .....

three. My <sup>(3)</sup> ..... is in primary two. We go to <sup>(4)</sup> ..... together.

**3 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: \_\_\_\_\_

I am Jana. I am eight years old. I am in primary three. I am from Egypt. I walk to my school. I love my teachers. They always help me. I also love my friends. I meet new friends every year.

**A** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

① Jana is ..... years old.

- a) seven                      b) nine                      c) eight

2 Jana is from .....

- a) China                      b) Egypt                      c) England

**B** Answer the following questions:

③ How does Jana go to her school? .....

4 Who does Jana meet every year? .....

4 Use the words below to complete the dialog: — استخدم الكلمات لتكمل المحادثة: SB

(Hello – later – fine – name – meet – Goodbye – morning – years)

Student A: ....., my ..... is Mariam.

Student B: Good ....., my name is Adam.

Student A: How are you, Adam?

Student B: I am ....., thank you.

Student A: How old are you?

Student B: I am 8 ..... old.

Student A: Nice to ..... you.

Student B: See you .....!

Student A: .....!

5 Reorder to make sentences: ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

1 you, – How – Ali – are? .....

2 fine, – I am – thank – you. ....

3 name – My – Hello! – Salma – is. ....

4 meet – Nice – to – you. ....

5 am – I – seven – old – years. ....

6 Punctuate the following: ..... ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1 good morning, rana! .....

2 how are you, Moaz .....

7 Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding

elements: ..... اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب.

"My new friend"  
(meet – name – old)

.....  
.....  
.....



## Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

## Classroom Phrases



Raise your hand.

ارفع يدك.



Listen carefully.

استمع جيداً.



Sit down.

اجلس.



Be kind.

كن عطوفاً.



Keep your classroom clean.

حافظ على نظافة فصلك.



Don't shout.

لا تصرخ.



May I go to the bathroom?

هل يمكنني الذهاب إلى الحمام؟

## Verbs

listen

يستمع

write

يكتب

run

يجري

leave

يغادر



## Checkpoint

Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

1

Be kind.

2

Sit down.

3

Keep your classroom clean.

4

Don't shout.



## B Phonics Focus



Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

Digraph (wh) /w/



what

ما / ماذا



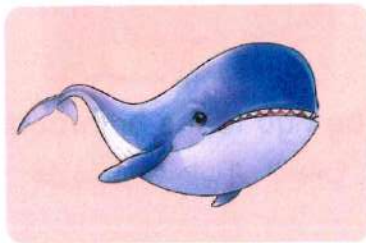
when

متى



where

أين



whale

حوت



wheel

إطار



white

أبيض



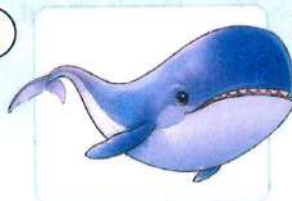
Checkpoint



Listen and write the missing sounds:

استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

1



\_\_ale

2



\_\_eel

3



\_\_en

4



\_\_ite





# Homework Time

ذاكر الكلمات حتى  
تتمكن من تسميعها في  
نهاية الوحدة  
في صفحة 52.

Look and write: انظر واكتب:



Raise your hand.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



Listen carefully.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



Sit down.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



Be kind.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



Keep your classroom clean.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



Don't shout.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



May I go to the bathroom?

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



Look and write:

انظر واكتب:



what



when

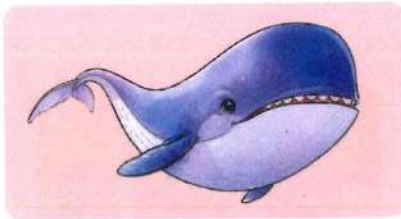


where

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'what'.

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'when'.

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'where'.



whale



wheel



white

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'whale'.

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'wheel'.

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'white'.





# Practice

on Lesson **2**



**1 Listen and write the missing sounds:** ——— استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

① — — at

② — — ere

③ — — ite

④ — — eel

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:** ————— اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

① I ..... my hand to speak.

a) clap

b) raise

c) close

② When class starts, we ..... down.

a) shout

b) leave

c) sit

③ I am ..... to my friends.

a) sad

b) kind

c) bad

④ I don't ..... in the classroom.

a) shout

b) listen

c) speak

⑤ I ..... my classroom clean.

a) run

b) keep

c) raise

⑥ May I ..... to the bathroom?

a) go

b) draw

c) listen

⑦ When the teacher talks, you should ..... carefully.

a) shout

b) listen

c) stand

**SB**

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

**(raise – clean – don't – kind)**

I love my school. I keep my classroom <sup>(1)</sup> ..... I <sup>(2)</sup> .....  
shout in class. I am <sup>(3)</sup> ..... to my friends. When I want to answer,  
I <sup>(4)</sup> ..... my hand.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Rana. I follow classroom rules. I listen carefully to my teacher. I raise my hand to speak. I am kind to my friends. I keep my classroom clean. I don't shout.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 Rana listens carefully to her ..... in the class.  
a) father                      b) teacher                      c) mother
- 2 She raises her hands to .....  
a) read                      b) write                      c) speak

**B Answer the following questions:**

- 3 What does Rana keep clean? .....
- 4 What doesn't Rana do?  .....

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- 1 your – Keep – clean – classroom. ....
- 2 the – I – bathroom – May – go to ? ....
- 3 carefully – Listen – to – your teacher. ....

**6 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 where do you live .....
- 2 what is your name .....

**7 Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

 مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

**Classroom rules**  
(raise – sit down – keep)

.....

.....

.....



## Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

## Describing looks وصف المظهر

tall  
طويلshort  
قصيرcurly hair  
شعر متموجstraight hair  
شعر ناعمlong hair  
شعر طويلshort hair  
شعر قصيرbrown eyes  
عيون بُنية

## Describing personality وصف الشخصية

funny  
مضحكshy  
خجولfriendly  
ودودhelpful  
مساعدpolite  
مؤدبkind  
عطوف

## Extra Vocabulary

everyone

كل شخص

help

مساعدة

top shelf

الرف العلوى

Verbs

laugh

يضحك

say

يقول

need

يحتاج

look

يبدو



Checkpoint

Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

1

tall

2

curly hair

3

kind

4

helpful



## Listening and Speaking:

▶ Read and repeat: اقرأ وردد:

- I am **funny**. I make my friends laugh. - أنا مضحك. أضحك أصدقائي.
- He is **friendly**. He says hello to everyone. - هو ودود. يُلقى التحية على الجميع.
- She is **helpful** when someone needs help. - هي مساعدة عندما يحتاج أحد إلى المساعدة.
- My teacher is **tall**. She can reach the top shelf. - معلمتي طويلة. يمكنها الوصول إلى الرف العلوي.
- She has **long hair**. It looks nice. - لديها شعر طويل. يبدو جميلاً.
- I have brown eyes and **curly hair**. - (أنا) لدى عيون بُنية وشعر متموج.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer: SB اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 My sister helps me. She is (kind – funny – friend).
- 2 He makes me laugh. He is (funny – angry – quiet).
- 3 You can reach the top shelf. You are (kind – friendly – tall).
- 4 She doesn't talk a lot. She is (funny – shy – tall).
- 5 My teacher smiles. She is (happy – angry – short).

2. Choose the suitable word to complete the sentences: اختر الكلمة المناسبة لتكمل الجمل: SB

(kind – curly – meet – helpful – tall)

- 1 I have ..... hair.
- 2 My sister is ..... . She is not short.
- 3 He helps everyone. He is .....
- 4 My mother is very .....



## B Language in Use

• Present Simple Tense for Descriptions: زمن المضارع البسيط للوصف:

**Usage:** We use the present tense to talk about who we are and what people are like.  
نستخدم زمن المضارع للتحدث عن من نحن وكيف يكون الناس.

Verb "to be" in the present simple فعل "يكون" في المضارع البسيط:

| Subject  | Verb to be | Examples                                           |
|----------|------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| I        | am         | I <b>am</b> happy. أنا سعيد.                       |
| He       | is         | He <b>is</b> a student. هو يكون طالبًا.            |
| She      |            | She <b>is</b> kind. هي تكون عطوفة.                 |
| It       |            | It <b>is</b> a cat. هي (لغير العاقل) تكون قطة.     |
| اسم مفرد |            | Mariam <b>is</b> a doctor. مريم تكون طبيبة.        |
| You      | are        | You <b>are</b> my friends. أنتم أصدقاء.            |
| We       |            | We <b>are</b> ready. نحن جاهزون.                   |
| They     |            | They <b>are</b> in class. هم في الفصل.             |
| اسم جمع  |            | Sama and Ahmed <b>are</b> funny. سما وأحمد مضحكان. |

✓ **Checkpoint** Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I (is – am) Hassan.
- 2 It (is – are) a dog.
- 3 They (am – are) tall.



## Asking Questions:

We use questions to learn about our friends. ————— نستخدم الأسئلة لتتعرف على أصدقائنا.

e.g. A: What is your name?

ما اسمك؟

B: My name is Sara.

اسمي سارة.

e.g. A: How are you today?

كيف حالك اليوم؟

B: I am fine, thank you.

أنا بخير، شكرًا لك.



### Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer: —————

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للقواعد.

1 A: Who is he?

B: He (am – is – are) my brother.

2 A: How old are you?

B: I (is – are – am) eight years old.

2 A: Who is she?

B: She (is – am – are) my mother.



## Reading for understanding



Look and read: —————

انظر واقرأ:

This is my friend Mona. She is very friendly, kind, and funny. She always tells jokes and helps her friends. Mona has long black hair and brown eyes. Everyone likes to play with her.

هذه صديقتي منى. إنها ودودة جدًا، لطيفة، ومضحكة. هي دائمًا تروى النكت وتساعد أصدقاءها. منى لديها شعر أسود طويل وعيون بنية. الجميع يحب اللعب معها.



### Checkpoint

Read and complete: —————

اقرأ وأكمل:

(long – play – friendly – jokes)

1 Mona is ..... and kind.

2 She always tells .....

3 She has ..... hair.

4 Everyone likes to ..... with her.





# Homework Time

ذاكر الكلمات حتى  
تتمكن من تسميعها في  
نهاية الوحدة  
في صفحة 52.

Look and write: \_\_\_\_\_ انظر واكتب:



tall



short



curly hair



straight hair

|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |



long hair



short hair



brown eyes

|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |

Look and write:

انظر واكتب:



funny

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



shy

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



friendly

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



helpful

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



polite

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



kind

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---





# Practice

on Lesson

3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 I ..... a student.

a) am

b) is

c) are

2 My friend is ..... . He always says, "please" and "thank you". SB

a) funny

b) polite

c) shy

3 We ..... in the classroom.

a) am

b) are

c) is

4 They ..... polite and kind.

a) am

b) is

c) are

5 The clown is ..... . He makes us laugh.

a) shy

b) polite

c) funny

6 Jana ..... very kind.

a) is

b) am

c) are

7 He helps everyone. He is ..... . SB

a) shy

b) helpful

c) tall

8 My teacher is ....., she always has a smile on her face. SB

a) shy

b) friendly

c) angry

9 How ..... you today?

a) is

b) am

c) are

10 He is ..... and doesn't like to talk much. SB

a) friendly

b) polite

c) shy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: SB

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(reach - friendly - tall - curly)

This is my new friend Laila. She is very <sup>(1)</sup> ..... . She always smiles and helps others. She has <sup>(2)</sup> ..... hair and big brown eyes. She is also very <sup>(3)</sup> ..... . She can <sup>(4)</sup> ..... the top shelf easily.





## Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



wake up

تستيقظ



brush my teeth

أغسل أسناني



get dressed

ترتدي ملابسها



make my bed

أرتب سريري



brush my hair

أمشط شعري بالفرشاة



have breakfast

تناول الإفطار



go to school

تذهب إلى المدرسة



do my homework

أؤدي الواجب المنزلي

## Verbs

sleep

ينام

play

يلعب

read

يقرأ

write

يكتب

eat

يأكل

watch TV

يشاهد التلفاز



## Checkpoint 1. Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① make my bed    ② have breakfast    ③ do my homework    ④ brush my hair



## 2. Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① I make my (bed – school) to keep it tidy.  
 ② I do my (homework – hair) after school.  
 ③ I (do – brush) my teeth when I wake up.  
 ④ I (wake – sleep) up in the morning.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

1



I brush my teeth.

أنا أغسل أسناني.

2



I go to school at 8 a.m.

أنا ذاهبة إلى المدرسة الساعة الثامنة صباحًا.

3



I do my homework.

أقوم بعمل واجبي.

4



I have breakfast.

أتناول الإفطار.

5



I make my bed.

أرتب سريرى.

6



I wake up at 7 a.m.

استيقظ الساعة السابعة صباحًا.



Checkpoint

Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(make – breakfast – do – school)

1 I go to ..... at 8 a.m.

2 I ..... my bed every day.

3 I ..... my homework after lunch.

4 I have ..... with my family at 7 a.m.



## Reading and writing

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Hello, I am Amir. Every day, I wake up at 6 a.m. I brush my teeth and get dressed. After I have breakfast, I go to school. I learn and play with my friends. After school, I go home and do my homework.



مرحبًا، أنا أمير. كل يوم أستيقظ في الساعة السادسة صباحًا. أغسل أسناني وأرتدى ملابسى. بعد أن أتناول وجبة الإفطار، أذهب إلى المدرسة. أتعلم وألعب مع أصدقائى. بعد المدرسة، أعود إلى المنزل وأؤدي واجبى المنزلى.

Checkpoint 1. Read and complete: اقرأ وأكمل:

(goes – six – teeth – learn)

- 1 Amir wakes up at ..... a.m.
- 2 He brushes his .....
- 3 He goes to school to .....
- 4 After school, he ..... home.

2. Answer the questions: أجب عن الأسئلة: SB

- 1 What time does Amir wake up? .....
- 2 What does Amir do after breakfast? .....
- 3 Where does Amir go after school? .....

## Language in Use

### Present Simple Tense for Routines:

**Usage:** We use the present simple to talk about routines and things we do every day. نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الروتين والأشياء التي نقوم بها كل يوم.

#### Affirmative form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I/ We/ You/ They + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر

He/ She/ It + (s/es/ies) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. I **play** football.

e.g. He **plays** in the park.

e.g. We **play** a game together.

e.g. She **plays** the piano.

**S**

Add **"-s"** to the verb when using **"he/she/it"**

اضف **"s"** للفعل عندما تستخدم **"he/she/it"**

e.g. eat  $\longrightarrow$  eats

**es**

If the verb ends in **"ch, sh, x, ss, or o"**, add **-es** with **"he/she/it"**.

إذا انتهى الفعل بـ **"ch أو sh أو x أو ss أو o"** ، نضيف **-es** مع الضمائر **"he/she/it"**.

e.g. watch  $\longrightarrow$  watches

**ies**

If a verb ends in a **consonant + y**, change the **y** to **i** and add **-es** with **"he/she/it"**.

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن متبوعاً بـ **y**، نُغيّر **y** إلى **i** ثم نضيف **-es** مع الضمائر **"he/she/it"**.

e.g. study  $\longrightarrow$  studies

**S**

If the verb ends in a **vowel + y**, add **-s** with **"he/she/it"**.

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف متحرك متبوعاً بـ **y**، نضيف **-s** فقط مع الضمائر **"he/she/it"**.

e.g. play  $\longrightarrow$  plays



#### Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للقواعد.

① I (wake – wakes) up at 7 a.m.

② Mariam (brush – brushes) her teeth every morning.

③ Hany and I (go – goes) to school by bus.

④ Judy (eat – eats) breakfast at 8 o'clock.

⑤ They (watch – watches) TV in the evening.

SB





# Homework Time

ذاكر الكلمات حتى  
تتمكن من تسميعها في  
نهاية الوحدة  
في صفحة 52.

Look and write:

انظر واكتب:



wake up



brush my teeth



get dressed



make my bed



brush my hair



have breakfast



go to school



do my homework



4

① They ..... to school at 7a.m.

- ② I do my ..... at 3 o'clock.

- ③ Nour ..... up at 6 a.m.

- 4 Sama ..... her breakfast with her father.

- ⑤ They ..... football after school.

- ⑥ She ..... her hair every day.

- ⑦ My mother ..... her bed in the morning.

- ⑧ We ..... hard at school.

- 

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

My name is Hana. I <sup>(1)</sup> ..... breakfast at 7 a.m. I go to <sup>(2)</sup> ..... at 8 a.m. I <sup>(3)</sup> ..... my homework at 2 p.m. I make my <sup>(4)</sup> ..... every day.

Hello, I am Amir. Every day, I wake up at 7 a.m. I brush my teeth and get dressed. After I have breakfast, I go to school. I learn and play with my friends. After school, I go home and do my homework.





# Unit 1 Review

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى  
تمكين الطالب من  
مراجعة أهم الأجزاء  
التي وردت في الوحدة.

## Lesson (1)

|                |                       |               |             |                   |              |
|----------------|-----------------------|---------------|-------------|-------------------|--------------|
| Hello!         | أهلاً!                | Good morning! | صباح الخير! | Nice to meet you. | سعيد بلقائك. |
| See you later! | أراك لاحقاً!          | How?          | كيف؟        | fine              | بخير         |
| thank you      | شكراً لك              | name          | اسم         | How old?          | كم عمر؟      |
| primary 3      | الصف الثالث الابتدائي | nice          | رائع        | Egypt             | مصر          |

## Lesson (2)

|                           |                              |                            |                      |              |          |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|--------------|----------|
| Raise your hand.          | ارفع يدك.                    | Listen carefully.          | استمع بحرص.          | Sit down.    | اجلس.    |
| Be kind.                  | كن عطوفاً.                   | Keep your classroom clean. | حافظ على نظافة فصلك. | Don't shout. | لا تصرخ. |
| May I go to the bathroom? | هل يمكنني الذهاب إلى الحمام؟ | listen                     | يستمع                | write        | يكتب     |
| run                       | يجري                         | leave                      | يفار                 |              |          |

## Lesson (3)

|           |          |            |          |            |             |               |          |
|-----------|----------|------------|----------|------------|-------------|---------------|----------|
| tall      | طويل     | short      | قصير     | curly hair | شعر متموج   | straight hair | شعر ناعم |
| long hair | شعر طويل | short hair | شعر قصير | brown eyes | عيون بنية   | kind          | عطوف     |
| helpful   | مساعد    | friendly   | ودود     | shy        | خجول        | funny         | مضحك     |
| polite    | مؤدب     | everyone   | كل شخص   | top shelf  | الرف العلوي |               |          |

## Lesson (4)

|               |                    |                |                     |
|---------------|--------------------|----------------|---------------------|
| wake up       | يستيقظ             | brush my teeth | أغسل أسناني         |
| get dressed   | يرتدي ملابس        | make my bed    | أرتب سريري          |
| brush my hair | أمشط شعري بالفرشاة | have breakfast | يتناول الإفطار      |
| go to school  | يذهب إلى المدرسة   | do my homework | أؤدي الواجب المنزلي |



## Phonics

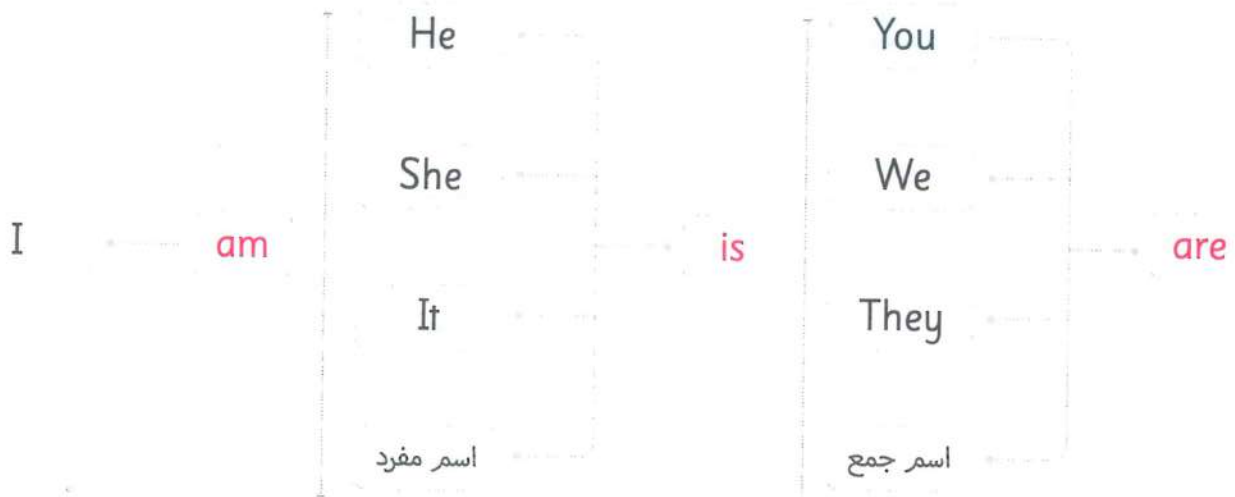
“wh” /w/

|                 |             |              |              |               |               |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| what<br>ما/ماذا | when<br>متى | where<br>أين | whale<br>حوت | wheel<br>إطار | white<br>أبيض |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|

## Language in Use:

### Verb “to be” in the present simple

فعل "يكون" في المضارع البسيط:



e.g. I **am** happy.

أنا سعيد.

e.g. He **is** a student.

هو يكون طالبًا.

e.g. You **are** my friends.

أنتم أصدقاؤ.

### Present Simple Tense for Routines:

#### Affirmative form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I/ We/ You/ They + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. I **play** football.

e.g. We **play** a game together.

He/ She/ It + (inf.) + (s/es/ies) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. He **plays** in the park.

e.g. She **plays** the piano.

# Unit 1 Dictation



تهدف هذه الجزئية إلى التأكد من إتقان الطالب لأهم المفردات اللغوية وفهمها باللغة العربية والإنجليزية.

اقرأ واكتب: Read and write:

|            | الكلمة باللغة العربية | الكلمة باللغة الإنجليزية |                      |
|------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| Lesson (1) | Hello!                | .....                    | صباح الخير!          |
|            | Nice to meet you.     | .....                    | أراك لاحقاً!         |
|            | How?                  | .....                    | بخير                 |
|            | thank you             | .....                    | يقابل                |
| Lesson (2) | Raise your hand.      | .....                    | استمع جيداً.         |
|            | Be kind.              | .....                    | حافظ على نظافة فصلك. |
|            | Don't shout!          | .....                    | اجلس                 |
|            | what                  | .....                    | أين                  |
|            | when                  | .....                    | حوت                  |
|            | wheel                 | .....                    | أبيض                 |
| Lesson (3) | tall                  | .....                    | قصير                 |
|            | curly hair            | .....                    | شعر قصير             |
|            | helpful               | .....                    | عيون بنية            |
|            | long hair             | .....                    | شعر ناعم             |
|            | friendly              | .....                    | مضحك                 |
|            | shy                   | .....                    | مؤدب                 |
| Lesson (4) | brush my teeth        | .....                    | يستيقظ               |
|            | make my bed           | .....                    | يرتدى                |
|            | have breakfast        | .....                    | أمشط شعري بالفرشاة.  |
|            | do my homework        | .....                    | يذهب إلى المدرسة     |

Write the missing letters, then put each word in a sentence:

اكتب الحروف الناقصة، ثم ضع كل كلمة في جملة:

1



fr\_end\_y



f\_nn\_

لتسميع كلمات أكثر خاصة بهذه الوحدة .. اذهب إلى كراسة التسميع آخر الكتاب.





تتضمن هذه الصفحة  
تجميعاً لأهم  
موضوعات الوحدة.

Golden tips for correct writing: نصائح ذهبية للكتابة الصحيحة:



► Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

Tip1:

ابدأ الجملة أو أسماء الأشخاص  
بحرف كبير "Capital letter".

"Introduce yourself"  
(name – old – Egypt)

Tip2:

ضع period (full stop)  
في نهاية الجملة.

My name is Ola. I am eight years old. I am in primary three. I am from Egypt.  
We go to school early every day.

Tip3:

اكتب بخط مرتب وواضح وتأكد من كتابتك للكلمات  
بشكل صحيح (correct spelling).

Tip4:

استخدم الكلمات المساعدة في  
كتابة جمل صحيحة.

"My daily routines"

(wake – have – school)

My name is Nour. I wake up at seven o'clock. I have breakfast with my mother.  
Then, I go to school at 8 o'clock.

"My new friend"

(meet – polite – brown)

I meet a new friend. She is very polite. She has brown eyes. She is tall. She is funny. She tells me jokes.

► Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

"Describe your teacher"

(friendly – kind – tall)



# Student's Book Corner

تدريبات إضافية مأخوذة من كتاب الوزارة.

## 1 Match the words to the pictures: صل الكلمات بالصورة:



sleep



play



read



go to school



wake up



write



eat



watch TV

## 2 Fill in the blanks with the words: املأ الفراغات بالكلمات:

(my breakfast – go to school – do my homework – wake up)

Ali : What time do you .....?

Lina : At 6:30 a.m. Then, I eat ..... and .....

Ali : What do you do after school?

Lina : I ..... and go to sleep.

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

1 Egyptian – I – am. ....

2 my – are – You – friend. ....

3 brown – eyes – have – They. ....

4 is – He – Egypt – from. ....

5 brown – have – hair – I. ....





# Test yourself

30

## Listening

1



Listen and write the missing sounds: استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

1 — — ale

2 — — ite

3 — — ere

4 — — at

## Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

1 My father is ..... . He is not short.

a) helpful

b) shy

c) tall

2 Nada ..... her hair every day.

a) brush

b) brushing

c) brushes

3 We ..... friendly and helpful.

a) am

b) are

c) is

4 I ..... my bed in the morning.

a) make

c) wash

c) do

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

2

(polite – eyes – helps – black)

My sister Heba is very kind. She <sup>(1)</sup> ..... her friends. She is very <sup>(2)</sup> ..... and friendly. She has long <sup>(3)</sup> ..... hair. Her <sup>(4)</sup> ..... are green.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

Hello, I am Adam. Every day, I wake up at 7 a.m. I wash my face and help my mother in the kitchen. After I eat my breakfast, I take the bus to school. I study many subjects and talk with my friends. After school, I go to the park and play football with my friends. In the evening, I do my homework.

**A** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1** Adam wakes up at ..... o'clock.  
a) eight                      b) ten                      c) seven
- 2** Adam helps his ..... in the kitchen.  
a) mother                      b) father                      c) sister

**B** Answer the following questions:

- ③ How does Adam go to school? .....
- ④ When does Adam do his homework? .....

## Writing

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** \_\_\_\_\_ أعدد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

2

- ① friend – with – like – I – to play – my.
- .....
- ② grandfather – 7 a.m. – eats – My – breakfast – at.

**6 Punctuate the following:** \_\_\_\_\_ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

- ① how are you, Ahmed .....
- ② my name is mazen. ....

**7** Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following

**7**

أكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: **guiding elements:** \_\_\_\_\_

مجاہد عنہ آخر کتاب.

### “My sister’s daily routine”

(wake – breakfast – brush)



# Unit 1 Al-Azhar Corner



30

1



Listen and number the pictures:

استمع ورقم الصور:

5

1 when

2 white

3 where

4 wheel

5 whale



2 Read and fill in the gaps:

اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

8

(is - helps - kind - top)

I am Osama. I am in primary three. My teacher is very <sup>(1)</sup> ..... She <sup>(2)</sup> ..... me and my classmates. She <sup>(3)</sup> ..... very tall. She can reach the <sup>(4)</sup> ..... shelf.

3 Unscramble and write:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات واكتب:

5



opilet



altl



hys



sorth



akwe pu

4 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

8

- 1 I (sleeping - sleeps - sleep) at 9 o'clock.
- 2 They (am - is - are) kind and helpful friends.
- 3 What (am - is - are) your name?
- 4 My father (gets - get - getting) dressed at nine a.m.
- 5 I have (kind - polite - curly) hair.
- 6 He helps his friends. He is (shy - helpful - short).
- 7 Keep your classroom (clean - polite - sad).
- 8 My (class - number - name) is Mariam.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

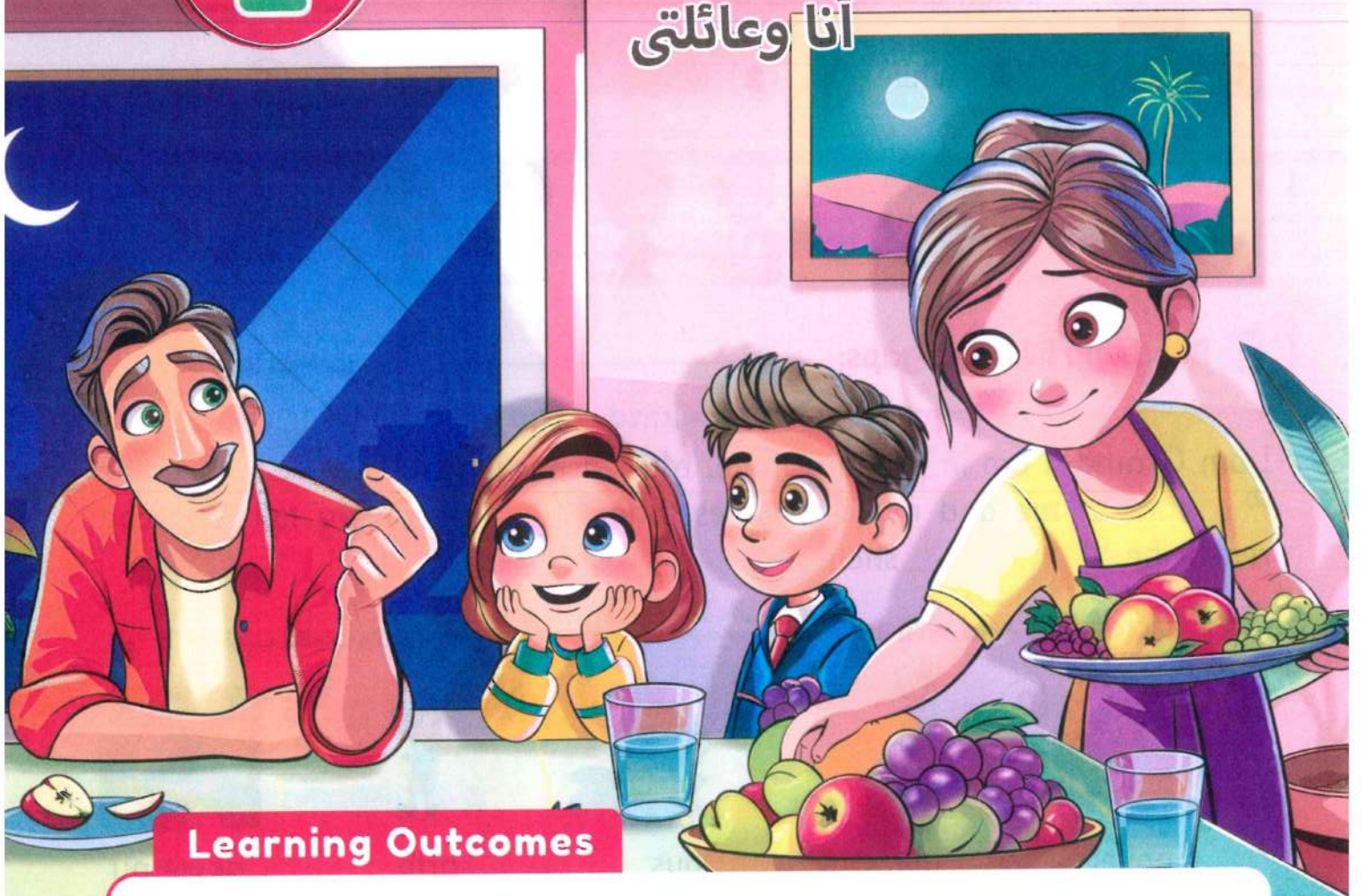
- 1 reem brushes her hair .....
- 2 when do you do your homework .....



## Unit 2

# My Family and I

أنا وعائلي



### Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادراً على أن:

#### Listening

- identify family members.
- recognize celebrations and traditions.
- recognize and identify different jobs.
- recognize the /f/ and /gz/ sounds in common English words.

- يتعرف على أفراد العائلة.
- يتعرف على الاحتفالات والتقاليد.
- يتعرف على الوظائف المختلفة وتحديدها.
- يتعرف على أصوات /f/ و /gz/ في الكلمات الإنجليزية الشائعة.

#### Speaking

- introduce family members and their jobs using possessive pronouns.
- discuss celebrations and family traditions.
- use simple sentences to describe how family helps one to grow.
- pronounce correctly the /f/ and /gz/ sounds in common English words correctly.

- يقدم أفراد العائلة ووظائفهم باستخدام ضمائر الملكية.
- يناقش الاحتفالات والتقاليد العائلية.

يستخدم جملًا بسيطة لوصف كيف تساعد العائلة في بناء شخصية فرد من أفراد الأسرة.

- ينطق أصوات /f/ و /gz/ بشكل صحيح في الكلمات الإنجليزية الشائعة.

#### Reading

- read simple sentences about family members and their jobs.
- read descriptive sentences about celebrations and traditions.
- read sentences describing how family helps one to grow.

- يقرأ جملًا بسيطة عن أفراد العائلة ووظائفهم.
- يقرأ جملًا وصفية عن الاحتفالات والتقاليد.
- يقرأ جملًا تصف كيف تساعد العائلة في بناء شخصية فرد من أفراد الأسرة.

#### Writing

- label family members, celebrations, and jobs.
- write simple sentences about family using possessive adjectives.

- يسمي أفراد العائلة، الاحتفالات، والوظائف.
- يكتب جملًا بسيطة عن العائلة باستخدام صفات الملكية.



## A Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

father  
أبmother  
أمsister  
أختbrother  
أخgrandmother  
جدةgrandfather  
جدuncle  
عم / خالaunt  
عمة / خالةcousins  
أبناء العم / الخال

## Extra Vocabulary

family members

أفراد العائلة

student

طالب

heavy (adj.)

ثقيل

friendly (adj.)

ودود

baby

طفل رضيع

cute (adj.)

لطيف



## Checkpoint

1. Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

① brother

② father

③ cousins

④ grandmother



2. Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① She's my (sister – uncle) Amira.
- ② He's my (grandmother – grandfather).
- ③ My baby brother is (cute – members).
- ④ These are my (baby – family) members.

## B Language in Use

### Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية

• We use possessive adjectives to show that something belongs to someone.

• نستخدم صفات الملكية لتوضيح أن هناك شيئاً ما يملكه شخص معين.

| Subject Pronouns<br>ضمائر الفاعل | Possessive Adjectives<br>صفات الملكية | Example                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>I</b><br>أنا                  | <b>my</b>                             |  <b>My</b> mother is a teacher.<br>أمي معلمة.  |
| <b>He</b><br>هو (مفرد مذكر)      | <b>his</b>                            |  <b>His</b> T-shirt is blue.<br>قميصه أزرق.   |
| <b>She</b><br>هي (مفرد مؤنث)     | <b>her</b>                            |  <b>Her</b> cat is friendly.<br>قطتها ودودة. |



#### Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للقواعد. 📢

- 1 I have a sister. (**My** – His – Her) name is Gamila.
- 2 This is Mona. (**My** – His – Her) bag is pink.
- 3 This is (**my** – his – her) book. I read it every night.
- 4 Ali is a good student. (**My** – His – Her) teacher likes him.
- 5 Sara is drawing a cat. (**My** – His – Her) picture is very nice.
- 6 Ahmed and (**I** – his – her) brother are playing football.
- 7 I am wearing (**my** – his – her) new shoes today.
- 8 Rania loves dogs. (**My** – His – Her) dog is very cute.



# Homework Time

ذاكر الكلمات حتى  
تتمكن من تسميعها في  
نهاية الوحدة  
في صفحة 82.

Look and write:

انظر واكتب:



father

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



mother

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



sister

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



brother

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



grandfather

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



grandmother

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



uncle

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



aunt

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



cousins

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



# Practice

on Lesson

1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 This is my ..... . He's old.  
a) mother                      b) sister                      c) grandfather
- 2 I have one ..... . She's nine.  
a) sister                      b) grandfather                      c) uncle
- 3 This is my ..... . He's a doctor.  
a) grandmother                      b) father                      c) mother
- 4 I have a toy. .... toy is blue and red.  
a) His                      b) I                      c) My
- 5 Omar is my friend. .... father is a teacher.  
a) My                      b) Her                      c) His
- 6 Talia has a baby sister. .... baby sister is cute.  
a) Her                      b) My                      c) His
- 7 I always help ..... mother at home.  
a) she                      b) my                      c) I
- 8 Grandfather and Grandmother are family .....  
a) teachers                      b) members                      c) students

Super Question ?

2 Fill in the blanks: أكمل الفراغات:

(His – Her – my)

SB

- 1 This is ..... bag. I take it to school.
- 2 That is Adam. .... book is blue.
- 3 Sara loves drawing. .... pictures are nice.
- 4 Dina has a cat. .... cat is cute.
- 5 This is Laila. .... dress is pink.





## A Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

Eid Al-Fitr  
عيد الفطرSham El-Nessim  
عيد شم النسيمMother's Day  
عيد الأم6<sup>th</sup> of October  
عيد السادس من أكتوبر

## Extra Vocabulary

favorite (adj.)

مفضل

celebration

احتفال

brave (adj.)

شجاع

soldiers

جنود

garden

حديقة

salted fish

سمك مملح

Verbs remind

يذكر play

يلعب eat

يأكل



## Checkpoint

1. Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① Sham El-Nessim    ② Eid Al-Fitr    ③ 6<sup>th</sup> of October    ④ Mother's Day



2. Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① My favorite (celebration – garden) is 6<sup>th</sup> of October.  
 ② We play in the garden in (Mother's Day – Sham El-Nessim).  
 ③ We remember our brave (salted fish – soldiers) on 6<sup>th</sup> of October.  
 ④ I buy a present for my mother on (Eid Al-Fitr – Mother's Day).





- ① My favorite celebration is 6<sup>th</sup> of October. It reminds us how brave the Egyptian soldiers are.

احتفالي المفضل هو السادس من أكتوبر. فهو يذكرنا بشجاعة الجنود المصريين.

- ② I love Sham El-Nessim as we go to the garden all day, play, and eat salted fish.

أحب شم النسيم لأننا نذهب إلى الحديقة طوال اليوم، نلعب ونأكل السمك المملح.



✓ **Checkpoint** Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(brave – salted – 6<sup>th</sup> – Sham El-Nessim)

SB

- ① My favorite celebration is the ..... of October.
- ② It reminds us how ..... the Egyptian soldiers are.
- ③ I love ..... as we go to the garden.
- ④ On Sham El-Nessim, we eat ..... fish.

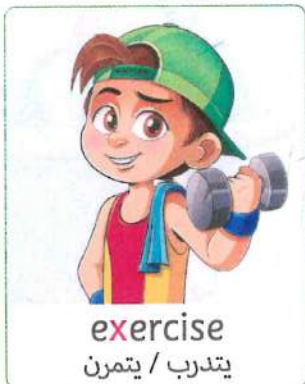
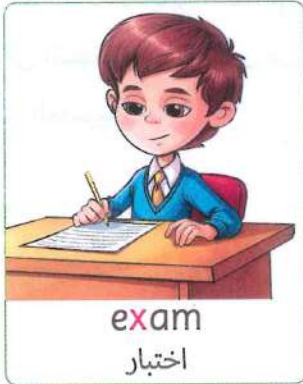
## B Phonics Focus



Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

~~X~~ /gz/



**ex**ample

مثال **ex**ist

يوجد



**Checkpoint**

Listen and write the missing sounds: — استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

1



e \_ amine

2



e \_ am

3



e \_ it

4



e \_ ercise



# Homework Time

ذاكر الكلمات حتى  
تتمكن من تسميعها في  
نهاية الوحدة  
في صفحة 82.

Look and write:

انظر واكتب:



Eid Al-Fitr



Sham El-Nessim



Mother's Day



6<sup>th</sup> of October



exam



exit



exercise



examine



# Practice

on Lesson **2**

**1**



**Listen and write the missing sounds:** ————— استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

- 1** e \_ am      **2** e \_ it      **3** e \_ ample      **4** e \_ amine

**2** **Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:** ————— اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1** We eat salted fish in .....  
 a) Eid Al-Fitr      b) Sham El-Nessim      c) 6<sup>th</sup> of October
- 2** Egyptian ..... are brave.  
 a) celebrations      b) salted fish      c) soldiers
- 3** Mona has a present for her mother on .....  
 a) Mother's Day      b) Sham El-Nessim      c) 6<sup>th</sup> of October
- 4** The doctor will ..... my eyes.  
 a) draw      b) examine      c) dance
- 5** He has an English ..... tomorrow.  
 a) example      b) exam      c) solider
- 6** The student needs ..... to understand the lesson. **Super Question**   
 a) exits      b) celebrations      c) examples

**3** **Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

**(Mother's – reminds – soldiers – favorite)**

I'm Talia and I love Egyptian celebrations. My <sup>(1)</sup>..... celebration is 6<sup>th</sup> of October. It <sup>(2)</sup>..... us how brave the Egyptian <sup>(3)</sup>..... are. Mom's favorite celebration is <sup>(4)</sup>..... Day.

**4** **Read the text and answer the questions:** ————— اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

We have different celebrations in Egypt. In Sham El-Nessim, we go to the garden all day. We play and eat salted fish. In Eid Al-Fitr, we wear new clothes and visit our family members. In 6<sup>th</sup> of October, we remember our brave soldiers.



**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

1 We have ..... celebrations in Egypt.

a) no

b) similar

c) different

2 We wear new clothes in .....

a) Eid Al-Fitr

b) Sham El-Nessim

c) Mother's Day

**B Answer the following questions:**

3 What do you do in Sham El-Nessim? .....

4 When do you remember the brave soldiers? .....

5 **Reorder to make sentences:** ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

1 Eid – I – Al-Fitr – love.

.....

2 an exam – today – I – have.

.....

3 in – We – salted – eat – fish – Sham El-Nessim.

.....

4 is – my – Mother's Day – celebration – favorite. Super Question ?

.....

6 **Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:** ..... اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب. 

**"Your favorite celebration"**

(Eid Al-Fitr – clothes – family)

.....  
.....  
.....

## A Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

cook  
تطبخhelp  
يساعدread  
يقرأ

## Extra Vocabulary

school

مدرسة

food

طعام

every day

كل يوم

homework

الواجب المنزلي

story

قصة

lunch

وجبة الغداء

## Verbs

do

يفعل

love

يحب

grow

ينمو / يكبر

take

يأخذ



## Checkpoint

## 1. Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

① read

② school

③ help

④ cook



## 2. Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

① I want to (love – help) my sister with her homework.

② I do my (homework – story) after school.

③ My mom (reads – cooks) stories for me.

④ I eat my (lunch – pencil) at school.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

1



My father **takes** me to school.

والدى يأخذنى إلى المدرسة.

2



My mother **cooks** us food every day.

أمى تطبخ لنا الطعام كل يوم.

3



My brother **helps** me do my homework.

أخى يساعدنى فى أداء واجباتى المدرسية.

4



My grandmother **reads** me a story.

جدتى تقرأ لى قصة.

e.g.



Hello I'm Nour. I love my family. My father and mother take me to school. They also cook me lunch. My brother plays with me. I love my family. They help me grow.

مرحباً أنا نور. أنا أحب عائلتى. والدى ووالدتى يأخذانى إلى المدرسة. كما أنهما يعدان لى الغداء. أخى يلعب معى. أنا أحب عائلتى. إنهم يساعدوننى على النمو.



Checkpoint Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

( **plays** – **grow** – **school** )

1 Nour's parents take her to .....

2 Her brother ..... with her.

3 Her family helps her .....

## B Phonics Focus



Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

ph /f/



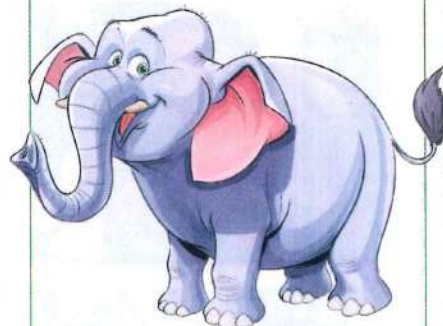
phone

هاتف



photo

صورة



elephant

فيل



graph

رسم بياني



alphabet

حروف الهجاء



Checkpoint



Listen and write the missing sounds:

استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

1



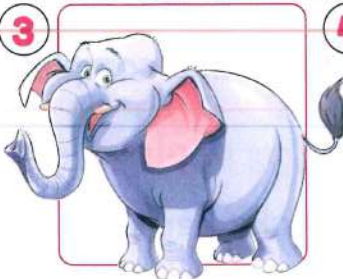
gra \_ \_

2



\_ \_ oto

3



ele \_ \_ ant

4



\_ \_ one





# Homework Time

ذاكر الكلمات حتى  
تتمكن من تسميعها في  
نهاية الوحدة  
في صفحة 82.

Look and write:

انظر واكتب:



cook

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'cook'.



help

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'help'.



read

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'read'.



phone

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'phone'.



photo

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'photo'.



elephant

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'elephant'.



graph

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'graph'.



alphabet

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'alphabet'.



# Practice

on Lesson **3**

**1**



**Listen and write the missing sounds:** ————— استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

① — — one

② — — oto

③ gra — —

④ al — — abet

**2**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:** ————— اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

① My mother ..... me do my homework.

a) reads

b) helps

c) takes

② Dad sometimes cooks .....

a) lunch

b) homework

c) school

③ We use the ..... to call our friends.

a) photo

b) phone

c) elephant

④ My grandmother reads me a .....

a) food

b) lunch

c) story

⑤ The ..... is a very big animal.

a) alphabet

b) graph

c) elephant

⑥ My family helps me .....



a) grow

b) take

c) do

**3**

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

**(plays – cook – family – mother)**

Hello, I'm Soha. I love my family. My father and my <sup>(1)</sup>..... take me to school. They also <sup>(2)</sup>..... me lunch. My brother <sup>(3)</sup>..... with me. My <sup>(4)</sup>..... helps me grow.



**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة :

Hani is in grade three. He loves his family. His father takes him to school every day. His mother cooks him delicious lunch. His grandmother reads a story for him.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 Hani is in grade .....  
a) one                                      b) two                                      c) three
- 2 Hani's ..... reads a story for him.  
a) father                                      b) grandmother                                      c) mother

**B Answer the following questions:**

- 3 What does Hani's father do? .....
- 4 Who cooks delicious lunch? .....

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- 1 me – My – helps – family – grow. ....
- 2 mother – My – takes – to school – me. ....
- 3 plays – My – sister – me – with. ....

**6 Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب.

**"How your family helps you"**

(take – food – love)

.....

.....

.....

## Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

farmer  
مزارعdoctor  
طبيبةteacher  
معلمbaker  
خبازpilot  
طيار

## Extra Vocabulary

patients

مرضى

delicious (adj.)

لذيذ

bread

خبز

around

حول

the world

العالم

## Verbs

bake

يخبز

travel

يسافر



## Checkpoint

1. Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

① doctor

② teacher

③ pilot

④ farmer



2. Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① The (doctor – teacher) works at the school.
- ② The doctor (helps – bakes) patients.
- ③ The pilot (bakes – travels) around the world.
- ④ Bakers bake delicious (jobs – bread).





My aunt works as a doctor.

She **helps patients**.

تعمل عمتي طبيبة تساعد المرضى.



My father is a teacher. **He works at a school.**

والدي مدرس. هو يعمل في مدرسة.



My uncle **bakes delicious bread.**  
He is a baker.

يخبز عمي خبزاً لذيذاً. إنه خباز.



My mother is a pilot. She **travels around the world.**

أمي طيارة. هي تسافر حول العالم.

**✓ Checkpoint** Read and complete: اقرأ وأكمل:

( **mother – doctor – works – bakes** )

- 1 My aunt is a .....
- 2 The teacher ..... at a school.
- 3 My uncle ..... delicious bread.
- 4 My ..... is a pilot.

Look and write:

انظر واكتب:



farmer

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



doctor

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



teacher

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



baker

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



pilot

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---





# Practice

on Lesson **4**

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1** The ..... helps patients in the hospital.  
a) teacher                      b) baker                      c) doctor
- 2** My father is a teacher. He works in a .....  
a) bakery                      b) school                      c) hospital
- 3** I want to be a ..... and travel around the world.  
a) farmer                      b) doctor                      c) pilot
- 4** My uncle is a ..... . He grows food.  
a) teacher                      b) farmer                      c) baker
- 5** The baker bakes delicious .....  
a) bread                      b) patients                      c) school

**2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

**(patients – world – aunt – pilot)**

In my family, we help other people. Mom is a <sup>(1)</sup>..... . She travels around the <sup>(2)</sup>..... . My <sup>(3)</sup>..... is a baker. She bakes delicious bread. Dad is a doctor. He helps <sup>(4)</sup>..... .

**3 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I am Ali. We have different jobs in our family. My aunt is a doctor. She helps patients. My uncle is a baker. He bakes delicious bread. My father is a teacher. He helps students at the school. I want to be a pilot when I grow up.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1** My uncle is a .....  
a) baker                      b) teacher                      c) doctor
- 2** My ..... helps students at the school.  
a) mother                      b) father                      c) uncle

**B Answer the following questions:**

3 Who helps patients?

4 What does Ali want to be when he grows up?

4 **Reorder to make sentences:** أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

1 works – My aunt – as a – doctor.

2 works – The – teacher – at a school.

3 bake – Bakers – bread – delicious.

4 travel – Pilots – around – the world. 

5 **Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1 my uncle is a pilot

2 does your mother help patients

6 **Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب. 

**"Jobs in my family"**

(teacher – school – doctor)



# Unit 2 Review

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى  
تمكين الطالب من  
مراجعة أهم الأجزاء  
التي وردت في الوحدة.

## Lesson (1)

|             |                    |                |               |          |          |         |            |
|-------------|--------------------|----------------|---------------|----------|----------|---------|------------|
| father      | أب                 | mother         | أم            | sister   | أخت      | brother | أخ         |
| grandmother | جدة                | grandfather    | جد            | uncle    | عم / خال | aunt    | عمة / خالة |
| cousins     | أبناء العم / الخال | family members | أفراد العائلة | friendly | ودود     | cute    | لطيف       |

## Lesson (2)

|                 |           |                |               |              |          |                            |                      |
|-----------------|-----------|----------------|---------------|--------------|----------|----------------------------|----------------------|
| Eid Al-Fitr     | عيد الفطر | Sham El-Nessim | عيد شم النسيم | Mother's Day | عيد الأم | 6 <sup>th</sup> of October | عيد السادس من أكتوبر |
| favorite (adj.) | مفضل      | celebration    | احتفال        | brave        | شجاع     | soldiers                   | جنود                 |
| salted fish     | سمك مملح  |                |               |              |          |                            |                      |

## Lesson (3)

|        |             |      |      |          |                |       |      |
|--------|-------------|------|------|----------|----------------|-------|------|
| take   | يأخذ        | cook | يطبخ | help     | يساعد          | read  | يقرأ |
| school | مدرسة       | food | طعام | homework | الواجب المنزلي | story | قصة  |
| lunch  | وجبة الغداء |      |      |          |                |       |      |

## Lesson (4)

|           |        |          |       |           |      |       |      |
|-----------|--------|----------|-------|-----------|------|-------|------|
| farmer    | مزارع  | doctor   | طبيبة | teacher   | معلم | baker | خباز |
| pilot     | طيار   | patients | مرضى  | delicious | لذيذ | bread | خبز  |
| the world | العالم |          |       |           |      |       |      |

## Phonics

**x** /gz/

exam

اختبار

exit

مخرج

example

مثال

exercise

يتدرب / يتمرّن

examine

يفحص

exist

يوجد

**ph** /f/

phone

هاتف

photo

صورة

elephant

فيل

graph

رسم بياني

alphabet

حروف الهجاء

## Language in Use

### Possessive Adjectives:

صفات الملكية:

Subject Pronouns

Possessive Adjectives

Example

I

أنا

my



My mother is a teacher.  
أمي معلمة.

He

هو (مفرد مذكر)

his



His T-shirt is blue.  
قميصه أزرق.

She

هي (مفرد مؤنث)

her



Her cat is friendly.  
قطتها ودودة.

# Unit 2 Dictation



تهدف هذه الجزئية إلى التأكد من إتقان الطالب لأهم المفردات اللغوية وفهمها باللغة العربية والإنجليزية.

## Read and write:

اقرأ واكتب:

|            | الكلمة باللغة العربية | الكلمة باللغة الإنجليزية |                      |
|------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| Lesson (1) | father                | .....                    | أخ                   |
|            | mother                | .....                    | عم / خال             |
|            | sister                | .....                    | جد                   |
|            | grandmother           | .....                    | بناء العم / الخال    |
|            | aunt                  | .....                    | ودود                 |
|            | family members        | .....                    | لطيف                 |
| Lesson (2) | Eid Al-Fitr           | .....                    | عيد السادس من أكتوبر |
|            | Sham El-Nessim        | .....                    | سمك مملح             |
|            | celebration           | .....                    | عيد الأم             |
|            | exam                  | .....                    | يتدرب / يتمرّن       |
|            | exit                  | .....                    | يفحص                 |
|            | example               | .....                    | يوجد                 |
| Lesson (3) | take                  | .....                    | يساعد                |
|            | cook                  | .....                    | يقرأ                 |
|            | story                 | .....                    | هاتف                 |
|            | graph                 | .....                    | صورة                 |
|            | alphabet              | .....                    | فيل                  |
| Lesson (4) | teacher               | .....                    | مزارع                |
|            | baker                 | .....                    | طبيبة                |
|            | pilot                 | .....                    | مرضى                 |
|            | bread                 | .....                    | لذيذ                 |

## Write the missing letters, then put each word in a sentence:

اكتب الحروف الناقصة، ثم ضع كل كلمة في جملة:

1 do-t-r



2 -ea-







تتضمن هذه الصفحة  
تجميعاً لأهم  
موضوعات الوحدة.

Golden tips for correct writing: نصائح ذهبية للكتابة الصحيحة:



- Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

**Tip1:**

Topic sentence

أبدأ الفقرة بجملة افتتاحية.

**"My family helps me grow"**

(love – school – grow)

**Tip2:**

Detailed

أضف جملاً توضح التفاصيل.

I love my family. My father takes me to school. My mom cooks me lunch.

My brother plays with me. They help me grow.

**Tip3:**

End

استخدم جملة مناسبة في نهاية الفقرة.

**Tip4:**

Punctuation

تأكد من وضع علامات الترقيم بشكل صحيح.

**"My favorite celebration"**

(October – remind – brave)

My favorite celebration is 6<sup>th</sup> of October. It reminds us how brave the Egyptian soldiers are.

**"Jobs in my family"**

(aunt – delicious – baker)

My aunt works as a doctor. She helps patients. My uncle bakes delicious bread. He is a baker.

- Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

**"Sham El-Nessim"**

(celebration – garden – fish)

1 Fill in the blanks: ..... أملاً الفراغات:

(My – His – Her )

يمكنك استخدام صفة الملكية أكثر من مرة:

- 1 Amira has a kite. .... kite is flying high.
- 2 I have a balloon. .... balloon is yellow.
- 3 Nader has a book. .... book is new.
- 4 I have a pet. .... pet is a rabbit.

2 Write the correct answer: ..... أكتب الإجابة الصحيحة:

(Sham El-Nessim – Mother's Day – Eid Al-Fitr – 6<sup>th</sup> of October)

1



3



2



4



3 Reorder the letters to form a word: ..... أعد ترتيب الحروف لتكون كلمة:

- |                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1 (x e a m) .....   | 2 (x i e t) .....   |
| 3 (o p h n e) ..... | 4 (h g a p r) ..... |

4 Reorder the words to form sentences: ..... أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملة:

- |                                             |       |
|---------------------------------------------|-------|
| 1 cousin – <u>My</u> – a doctor – is.       | ..... |
| 2 grandfather – <u>His</u> – a farmer – is. | ..... |
| 3 <u>She</u> – a teacher – is.              | ..... |
| 4 wants – <u>He</u> – be – to – a doctor.   | ..... |





# Test Yourself

30

## Listening



1

Listen and write the missing sounds: استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

1 \_ \_ oto

2 e \_ am

3 ele \_ \_ ant

4 e \_ it

## Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

1 My grandma ..... me a story every day.

a) helps

b) reads

c) cooks

2 The ..... travels around the world.

a) pilot

b) teacher

c) baker

3 This is ..... bag. I take it to school.

a) I

b) her

c) my

4 Noha does ..... homework after school.

a) she

b) his

c) her

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

2

(homework – food – father – family)

I love my family. My <sup>(1)</sup>..... takes me to school. My mother cooks us

<sup>(2)</sup>..... every day. My brother helps me do my <sup>(3)</sup>..... . I have a nice

<sup>(4)</sup>.....

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

My Name is Ola. My father is a teacher. He works in a big school. My mom is a doctor. She helps patients. My aunt is a baker. She bakes delicious bread.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 Ola's father is a .....  
a) teacher                      b) baker                      c) doctor
- 2 Ola's ..... helps patients.  
a) aunt                      b) mom                      c) father

**B Answer the following questions:**

- 3 Where does Ola's father work? .....
- 4 Who bakes delicious bread? .....

**Writing**

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

2

- 1 brother – My – plays – me – with. ....
- 2 your – uncle – Is – a doctor? .....

**6 Punctuate the following:** ..... ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

- 1 sara's father is a farmer .....
- 2 what's your favorite celebration .....

**7 Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:** ..... اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

7

مجاوب عنه آخر الكتاب.

"6<sup>th</sup> of October"

(favorite – remind – soldiers)



## Unit 2 Al-Azhar Corner

30

1



Listen and number the pictures: استمع ورقم الصور:

5

- 1 Eid A-Fitr 2 phone 3 cousins 4 doctor 5 grandfather



2 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملاً الفراغات:

8

(play – salted – cousins – favorite)

I love Sham El-Nessim. It is my <sup>(1)</sup> ..... celebration. We go to the garden and <sup>(2)</sup> ..... all day. We eat <sup>(3)</sup> ..... fish. I play games with my <sup>(4)</sup> .....

3 Unscramble and write:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات واكتب:

5

1



othmer

2



mefarr

3



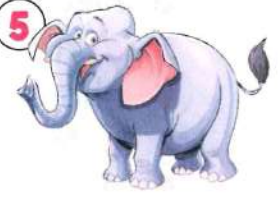
itex

4



rothber

5



ephanlet

4 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

8

- 1 The (farmer – teacher – doctor) works in the farm.
- 2 My brother (takes – reads – helps) me do my homework.
- 3 Eid Al-Fitr is my favorite (family member – celebration – food).
- 4 Mom cooks (homework – story – lunch).
- 5 Hamza is clever. (His – Her – He) teachers love him.
- 6 This is (I – my – she) friend Omar.
- 7 Habiba likes reading. This is (his – my – her) new book.
- 8 I love my family. (I – His – My) father is a doctor.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

- 1 my mother is a pilot .....
- 2 what does your uncle do .....

# Al-Adwaa Revision – October

المراجعة الشهرية الخاصة بمقرر شهر أكتوبر.



**1 Listen and write the missing sounds:**

استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

**A**

- ① \_ \_ ale      ② ele \_ \_ ant      ③ \_ \_ ite      ④ \_ \_ at

**B**

- ① \_ \_ oto      ② \_ \_ eel      ③ gra \_ \_      ④ e \_ ercise

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

**A**

- ① Nader has a book. .... book is new. SB  
 a) My      b) Her      c) His
- ② The ..... makes fresh bread every morning.  
 a) doctor      b) teacher      c) baker
- ③ Please ..... if you want to answer.  
 a) run      b) raise your hand      c) leave
- ④ I have crayons. .... crayons are colorful.  
 a) My      b) Her      c) His
- ⑤ When the teacher talks, you should ..... SB  
 a) listen carefully      b) stand up      c) write fast
- ⑥ My sister ..... cartoons every morning.  
 a) watch      b) watches      c) watching

**B**

- ① My dad is ..... He can reach the top shelf.  
 a) quiet      b) angry      c) tall
- ② He ..... pictures in an art class.  
 a) drawing      b) draw      c) draws
- ③ Nada and I ..... friends.  
 a) am      b) is      c) are
- ④ My sister is very ..... She shares her toys. SB  
 a) friendly      b) shy      c) funny
- ⑤ My ..... is the best; he always takes care of me.  
 a) father      b) mother      c) sister
- ⑥ I ..... my homework every day.  
 a) do      b) does      c) doing



### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

A

(farmer – pilot – teacher – doctor)

People have different jobs to help others. A <sup>(1)</sup> ..... takes care of people when they are sick. A <sup>(2)</sup> ..... helps students learn at school. A <sup>(3)</sup> ..... flies planes all around the world. A <sup>(4)</sup> ..... grows plants and takes care of animals.

B

(sister – mother – brother – grandfather)

My name is Salma. I have a big family. My father is a doctor and my <sup>(1)</sup> ..... is a teacher. I have one <sup>(2)</sup> ..... His name is Hussein. I also have one <sup>(3)</sup> ..... Her name is Sarah. On Fridays, I visit my <sup>(4)</sup> ..... and my grandmother. They tell me stories and give me sweets!

### 4 Reorder to make sentences:

أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

A

- ① my – are – You – friend. (SB) .....
- ② brown – have – hair – I. (SB) .....

B

- ① bread – cakes – bake – and – Bakers. .....
- ② are – pictures – Her – nice. ....

### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

A

- ① my brother is very funny .....
- ② a farmer grows fruits and vegetables .....

B

- ① omar rides a bike .....
- ② i bought a cake from the baker .....

# Al-Adwaa Tests – October

## Model

1

### Listening



1 Listen and write the missing sounds: استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

- ① e \_ amine      ② \_ \_ ite      ③ ele \_ \_ ant      ④ e \_ am

### Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① My ..... is very kind to all the students.  
a) pilot      b) teacher      c) engineer
- ② Hamza ..... English every day.  
a) study      b) studies      c) studying
- ③ When class starts, we .....  
a) sit down      b) shout      c) leave
- ④ My mother ..... me with my homework every day.  
a) helping      b) help      c) helps
- ⑤ I always say ..... when someone helps me.  
a) thank you      b) hello      c) goodbye
- ⑥ I have a pet cat. .... cat is very cute.  
a) My      b) Her      c) His
- ⑦ Hussein has a kite. .... kite flies high.  
a) My      b) Her      c) His
- ⑧ Salwa ..... her teeth every morning.  
a) brush      b) brushes      c) brushing

SB

### Writing

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(teacher – baker – pilot – doctor)

People have different jobs to help others. A <sup>(1)</sup> ..... helps students learn new things at school. A <sup>(2)</sup> ..... flies planes to take people around the world. A <sup>(3)</sup> ..... takes care of sick people. A <sup>(4)</sup> ..... makes bread and cakes. All of these jobs are important and helpful.



## Model

2

### Listening

1



Listen and write the missing sounds:

استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

① \_ \_ en

② \_ \_ one

③ e \_ ample

④ \_ \_ at

### Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① We ..... our teeth in the morning.  
a) brush                      b) brushes                      c) brushing
- ② Ali plays football. .... team is strong.  
a) My                      b) Her                      c) His
- ③ I read every day. .... books are interesting.  
a) My                      b) Her                      c) His
- ④ The ..... writes on the board.  
a) teacher                      b) doctor                      c) farmer
- ⑤ The ..... travels all around the world.  
a) doctor                      b) farmer                      c) pilot
- ⑥ Farida has a doll. .... doll wears a pink dress.  
a) My                      b) Her                      c) His
- ⑦ The cat and the dog ..... on the table.  
a) am                      b) is                      c) are
- ⑧ He makes me laugh. He is .....  
a) funny                      b) angry                      c) quiet

SB

### Writing

3

Reorder to make sentences:

أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- ① meet – to – Nice – you. ....
- ② make – my bed – I – every day. ....
- ③ grandfather – His – farmer – is – a. ....
- ④ uncle – is – My – a police officer. ....
- ⑤ stories – Her – creative – are. ....

# Model 3 Al-Azhar



1 Listen and number the pictures: استمع ورقم الصور:

- 1 farmer 2 shout 3 whale 4 wheel 5 grandmother

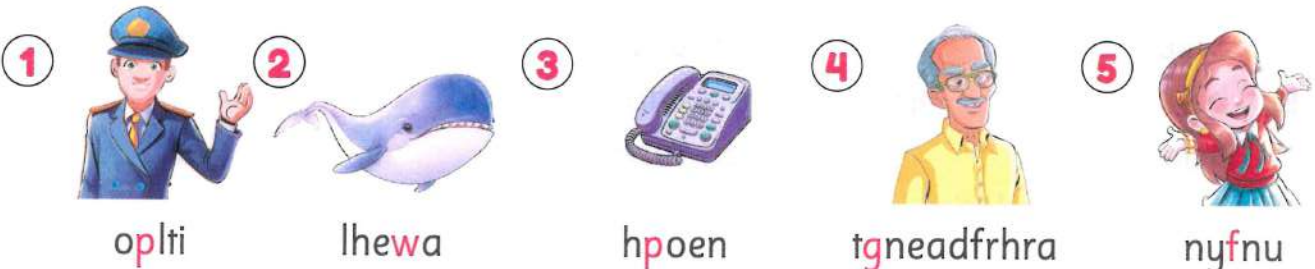


2 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملاً الفراغات:

(funny – kind – friendly – polite)

We are a happy family. My mother is very <sup>(1)</sup>..... because she always cares about everyone. My brother is <sup>(2)</sup>.....; he always says "please" and "thank you" when he talks to others. I have a sister who is really <sup>(3)</sup>.....; she tells jokes that make us laugh all the time. Everyone in my family is also very <sup>(4)</sup>....., so we make our home a happy place.

3 Unscramble and write: أعد ترتيب الكلمات واكتب:



4 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The teacher says, (open your book – stand up – eat) on page 5. (SB)
- 2 My father is a (farmer – baker – teacher). He works at a school.
- 3 Please don't (read – shout – write) in the classroom.
- 4 My teacher smiles. She is (happy – angry – short).
- 5 The (teacher – baker – doctor) helps patients.
- 6 I said, "(Goodbye – Good morning – Thank you)" when my friend gave me a gift.
- 7 The (doctor – teacher – farmer) gives me medicine.
- 8 They (goes – go – going) to school every day. (SB)

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 my aunt works as a doctor .....
- 2 i like my teacher because she is kind .....





# Module 2

Unit 3 New Adventures

Unit 4 Let's Tell Stories!



# Unit 3

# New Adventures

## مغامرات جديدة



### Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

#### Listening

- identify places and landmarks in Egypt.
- recognize prepositions of place.
- recognize double consonant endings.

- يميز الأماكن والمعالم في مصر.
- يتعرف على حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان.
- يتعرف على نهايات الحروف الساكنة المزدوجة.

#### speaking

- name and describe places and landmarks.
- describe places of items using prepositions of place.
- pronounce correctly double consonant endings.
- pronounce correctly the digraph "ck" in common English words.

- يسمى ويصف الأماكن والمعالم.
- يصف أماكن الأشياء باستخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان.
- ينطق نهايات الحروف الساكنة المزدوجة بشكل صحيح.
- ينطق التركيب المزدوج "ck" بشكل صحيح في الكلمات الإنجليزية الشائعة.

#### Reading

- read short paragraphs about local places and landmarks.
- read a short paragraph that includes the past tense and prepositions.
- read words with double consonant endings and /k/ sound.

- يقرأ فقرات قصيرة عن الأماكن المحلية والمعالم.
- يقرأ فقرة قصيرة تحتوي على الزمن الماضي وحروف الجر.
- يقرأ كلمات تحتوي على نهايات حروف ساكنة مزدوجة وصوت /k/.

#### Writing

- label places and landmarks.
- write simple sentences using the past tense and correct punctuation.

- يضع تسميات للأماكن والمعالم.
- يكتب جملًا بسيطة باستخدام الماضي وعلامات الترقيم الصحيحة.



## Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

house  
منزلlibrary  
مكتبة عامةsupermarket  
سوبر ماركتpark  
حديقة عامةtrain station  
محطة قطارmuseum  
متحف

## Extra Vocabulary

|                  |            |                |               |          |        |
|------------------|------------|----------------|---------------|----------|--------|
| early            | مبكراً     | in the morning | في الصباح     | shopping | التسوق |
| big              | كبير الحجم | train          | قطار          | lunch    | الغداء |
| in the afternoon | في الظهرية | busy           | مشغول / مزدحم | fun      | ممتع   |
| Verbs            | leave      | يغادر          | go            | يذهب     | يقرأ   |
|                  | pass       | يمر على        | see           | يرى      | يزور   |



## Checkpoint

## 1. Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① library      ② museum      ③ park      ④ supermarket



## 2. Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① I live in a (park – house).  
 ② We buy food from the (museum – supermarket).  
 ③ I play with my friends at the (park – train station).  
 ④ We can read books at the (library – museum).



Warm up

Do you like reading books?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه



## Youssef's Busy Day



Youssef left his house early in the morning. First, he went to the library to read a book. Then, he and his mom went shopping at the supermarket. They passed the train station and saw a big train. After lunch, they visited the museum. In the afternoon, they played at the park. What a fun and busy day!

غادر يوسف البيت في الصباح الباكر. أولاً، ذهب إلى المكتبة العامة ليقراً كتاباً. ثم ذهب مع والدته للتسوق في السوبر ماركت. لقد مرّاً بمحطة القطار ورأيا قطاراً كبيراً. بعد الغداء، زارا المتحف. بعد الظهر، لعبا في الحديقة العامة. يا له من يوم مزدحم ومليء بالمتعة!



Checkpoint

Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(train – house – supermarket – museum)

- 1 Youssef left his ..... early in the morning.
- 2 He and his mom went shopping at the .....
- 3 They passed the ..... station and saw a big train.
- 4 After lunch, they visited the .....



## B Phonics Focus

### Double Consonant Endings



Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

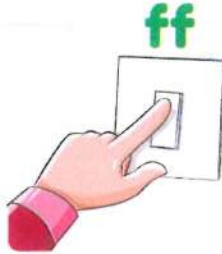
- If a short word has a short vowel sound, and it ends with (f, l, s, or z) we often write two of those letters (double consonants).

إذا كانت الكلمة القصيرة تحتوى على صوت حرف متحرك قصير، وتنتهى بـ (f، l، s، أو z) فإننا غالبًا ما نكتب اثنين من تلك الحروف (الحروف الساكنة المزدوجة).



cuff

كم قميص



off

يطفىء (إيقاف)



staff

فريق عمل



bell

جرس



pull

يسحب



tell

يخبر



grass

حشائش



less

أقل



miss

تفقد



buzz

طنين



fuzz

وبر



jazz

موسيقى الجاز

Look and write: انظر واكتب:



house



library



supermarket



park



train station



museum





1

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Super Question** 

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

Laila woke up early and had her breakfast. She started her day by visiting the library to <sup>(1)</sup> ..... her favorite story. After that, she and her dad went to the market to buy some <sup>(2)</sup> ..... . On their way, they walked past the station and saw a fast <sup>(3)</sup> ..... . In the afternoon, Laila played with her friends at the <sup>(4)</sup> ..... . It was a fun and busy day!

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Unit Three

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

1 Nora went to the ..... in the morning.

a) zoo

b) library

c) park

2 She saw a ..... at the station.

a) bus

b) train

c) truck

**B Answer the following questions:**

3 Who went with Nora to the supermarket? .....

4 Where did Nora go after lunch? .....

**4 Reorder to make sentences:** ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

1 went – train – Anas – to – station – the. ....

2 busy – day – What – and – a fun! ....

3 house – left – Sara – early – her. ....

4 did – go – lunch – Where – he – after? ....

**5 Punctuate the following:** ..... ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1 where did Youssef go first .....

2 what a fun and busy day .....

**6 Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:** ..... اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب. 📌

**"Your busy day"**

(morning – supermarket – train station)

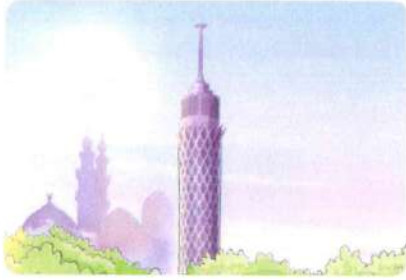


## Main Vocabulary



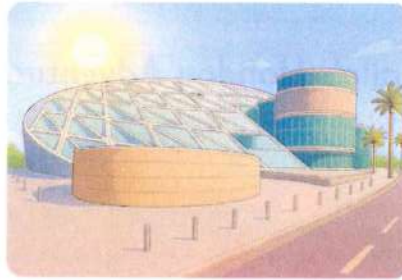
Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



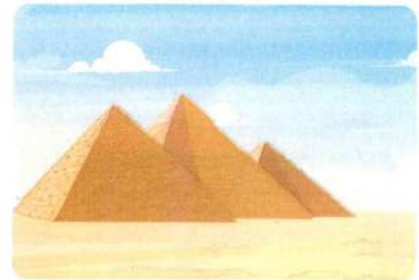
The Cairo Tower

برج القاهرة



The Alexandria Library

مكتبة الإسكندرية



The Pyramids of Giza

أهرامات الجيزة

## Extra Vocabulary

family

عائلة / أسرة

pictures

صور

whole (adj.)

كل

city

مدينة

great (adj.)

عظيم

camel

جمل

holiday

أجازة

adventure

مغامرة

## Verbs

take

يأخذ

explore

يكتشف

love

يحب

travel

يسافر



## Checkpoint 1. Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

1 The Pyramids of Giza

2 The Alexandria Library

3 The Cairo Tower



## 2. Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 We can visit the three (towers – pyramids) at Giza.

2 I went to Alexandria to visit the Alexandria (Library – Pyramids).

3 The Cairo (Tower – Clock) is very high.



**Warm up**

Did you visit the Alexandria Library?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

**Laila's Holiday Adventure**



Laila visited the Cairo Tower with her family. They took pictures and saw the whole city. Next, they explored the great Pyramids of Giza. Laila loved the camels! Then, they traveled to Alexandria. At the Alexandria Library, she read fun books. It was the best holiday she ever had!

زارت ليلي برج القاهرة مع عائلتها. التقطوا صوراً ورأوا المدينة كلها بعد ذلك، استكشفوا أهرامات الجيزة العظيمة. أحببت ليلي الجمال! ثم سافروا إلى الإسكندرية، في مكتبة الإسكندرية، قرأت ليلي كتباً ممتعة. لقد كانت أفضل عطلة قضتها في حياتها!



**Checkpoint**

Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(holiday – traveled – Library – loved)

- 1 Laila ..... riding camels.
- 2 We visited the Alexandria .....
- 3 My father ..... to Aswan last week.
- 4 We had a nice ..... in Alexandria.



## B Phonics Focus

### Digraph "ck" = /k/ sound



Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

- "ck" refers to a spelling rule for the /k/ sound, especially at the end of words. The letters "ck" together make one /k/ sound (like in "cat" or "kite").  
/ck/ sounds like /k/.

يشير "ck" إلى قاعدة إملائية لصوت /k/، وخاصة في نهاية الكلمات:  
الحروف "ck" معًا تصدر صوتًا واحدًا /k/ (كما في "cat" أو "kite"). /ck/ يبدو مثل /k/.

ck



duck  
بطة



sock  
جورب



back  
ظهر



neck  
رقبة



truck  
شاحنة كبيرة

Rearrange the letters to make a word: **SB** أعد ترتيب الحروف لتكون كلمة:

1 u c k d      2 k o s c      3 b k a c

4 k n e c      5 t k c u r

## C Punctuation Tips



**Capital letters** الحروف الكبيرة A, B, C, D, E, etc.

- At the beginning of the sentences: في بداية الجمل: e.g. • He is in grade two.
- Names of people: أسماء الأشخاص: e.g. • Laila can jump.



**Period** (full stop) النقطة

- At the end of the sentences: في نهاية الجمل: e.g. • Reem is tall.



**Question Mark** علامة الاستفهام

- At the end of the questions: في نهاية الأسئلة: e.g. • How old are you?



**Checkpoint** Choose the sentences with the correct punctuation:

اختر الجمل ذات علامات الترقيم الصحيحة:

- |                                          |                                           |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| ① ali is five.<br>Ali is five.           | ② What's your name?<br>what's your name   |
| ③ i like chocolate.<br>I like chocolate. | ④ Sara is at school.<br>sara is at school |
| ⑤ can you skip.<br>Can you skip?         | ⑥ I drink milk.<br>i drink milk           |
| ⑦ ahmed is happy.<br>Ahmed is happy.     | ⑧ Where is the book?<br>where is the book |





# Homework Time

ذاكر الكلمات حتى  
تتمكن من تسميعها في  
نهاية الوحدة  
في صفحة 120.

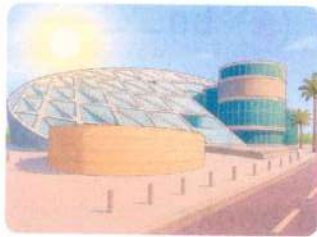
Look and write:

انظر واكتب:



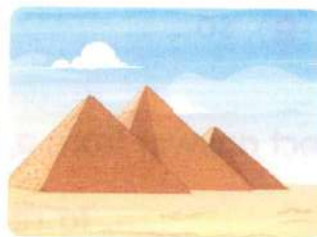
the Cairo Tower

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'the Cairo Tower'.



the Alexandria Library

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'the Alexandria Library'.



The Pyramids of Giza

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'The Pyramids of Giza'.



duck

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'duck'.



sock

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'sock'.



back

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'back'.



neck

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'neck'.



truck

Handwriting practice lines for the word 'truck'.



# Practice

on Lesson **2**

**1**



Listen and write the missing sounds: \_\_\_\_\_ استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

**1**

du \_ \_

**2**

so \_ \_

**3**

ba \_ \_

**4**

tru \_ \_

**2**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: \_\_\_\_\_ اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

**1**

We visited the ..... to read books.

a) Cairo Tower

b) Alexandria Library

c) duck

**2**

The ..... Tower is a tall building in Cairo.

a) Cairo

b) Pyramid

c) Alexandria

**3**

Tourists come from around the world to see the .....

a) duck

b) Pyramids of Giza

c) holiday

**4**

The yellow ..... is swimming in the water.

a) duck

b) back

c) library

**5**

I wear a warm ..... in winter.

a) sock

b) tower

c) neck

**6**

My friend hit me on my .....

a) holiday

b) back

c) duck

**7**

We went to the beach on the .....

a) holiday

b) library

c) pyramids

**8**

I took many ..... with my camera.

a) pictures

b) socks

c) towers

Super Question ?

**3**

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

**(pyramids – fun – Alexandria – pictures)**

Nadia had a nice holiday with her family. First, they saw the tall tower. Nadia took many <sup>(1)</sup>..... . Then, they visited the <sup>(2)</sup>..... for the first time! After that, they went to the library in <sup>(3)</sup>....., where she read interesting books. Nadia had so much <sup>(4)</sup>.....!





## A Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



on

على



under

تحت



behind

خلف



between

بين



in front of

أمام



in

في / بداخل

## Extra Vocabulary

toy car

سيارة لعبة

room

غرفة

couch

كنبة / أريكة

curtain

ستارة

stuck (adj.)

عالق

stick

عصا

happy (adj.)

سعيد

table

منضدة

## Verbs

roll

يتدحرج / ينقلب

look for

يبحث عن

check

يفحص / يتأكد

come

يأتي

use

يستخدم

pull

يسحب

put

يضع

smile

يبتسم



## Checkpoint

Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

1

on

2

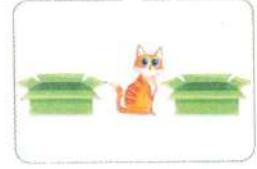
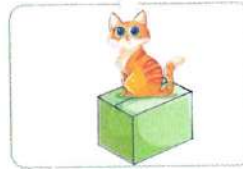
in

3

between

4

under







Warm up

Can you draw a picture of a toy car?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه



Samy and the Toy Car

One day, Samy was playing in his room when his toy car rolled under the couch. He looked for it behind the curtain and in front of the TV, but it was gone. Then, he checked between the two chairs and saw it was stuck. His sister came to help. She used a stick to pull it out from under the couch. Samy was so happy! He put the toy car on the table and smiled.



في يوم من الأيام، كان سامي يلعب في غرفته عندما تدحرجت سيارته اللعبة تحت الأريكة. بحث عنها خلف الستارة وأمام التلفاز، لكنها لم تكن هناك. ثم نظر بين الكرسين وراها عالقة. جاءت أخته لمساعدته. استخدمت عصا لسحبها من تحت الأريكة. كان سامي سعيدًا جدًا! وضع السيارة على الطاولة وابتسم.



Checkpoint

Reorder the words to form a sentence: اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملة:

① the couch – toy car – rolled – under – The.

② His – came – to – sister – help.

③ a stick – to pull – She – used – it out.

④ the – put – Samy – toy car – on the table.

## B Language in Use

### Prepositions of Place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

• They are words that tell you where something is found.

إنها كلمات تخبرك مكان وجود شيء ما.



on على

e.g. The cat is **on** the chair.



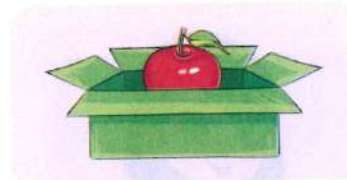
between بين

e.g. The ball is **between** the shoes.



under تحت

e.g. The dog is **under** the table.



in داخل/ في

e.g. The apple is **in** the box.



behind خلف

e.g. The boy is **behind** the door.



in front of أمام

e.g. The girl is **in front of** the school.



#### Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للقواعد.

- ① The toy car is (**on** – in – **between**) the table.
- ② The ball is (**between** – on – in front of) the chair and the couch.
- ③ The shoes are (**between** – in – **under**) the bed.
- ④ The car is (in front of – on – **between**) the house.
- ⑤ The cat was (in – **behind** – **between**) the door.





# Homework Time

ذاكر الكلمات حتى  
تتمكن من تسميعها في  
نهاية الوحدة  
في صفحة 120.

Look and write:

انظر واكتب:



on



under



behind



between



in front of



in



## Practice

on Lesson **3**

3

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**
- اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:
- 1 The book is ..... the table.  
a) in                      b) on                      c) between
  - 2 The ball is ..... the two chairs.  
a) between                      b) behind                      c) in
  - 3 The cat is sitting ..... the door, not behind it.  
a) in front of                      b) between                      c) in
  - 4 The boy is hiding ..... the door.  
a) behind                      b) on                      c) between
  - 5 The girl is ..... the school.  
a) between                      b) in front of                      c) under
  - 6 The dog is ..... the box and the ball.  
a) between                      b) in front                      c) under
  - 7 The cat is ..... the chair.  
a) behind                      b) in                      c) between
  - 8 The TV is ..... the table.   
a) behind                      b) under                      c) on

**2** Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(happy – under – rolled – help)

One afternoon, Mariam was drawing with her pencil. Suddenly, her pencil fell and <sup>(1)</sup>..... under the chair. She looked behind the door and next to her bag, but she couldn't find it. She looked <sup>(2)</sup>..... the chair and saw it. Her brother came to <sup>(3)</sup>..... . He used a ruler to reach the pencil. Mariam was very <sup>(4)</sup>.....! She thanked him and continued her drawing.



**3 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

One morning, Ahmed was building a tower with his blocks. Suddenly, one block fell and rolled under the table. He looked beside the sofa and behind the box, but it wasn't there. Then, he saw it under the table. His sister came and helped him pick it up. Ahmed smiled and finished his tower happily.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 Ahmed was ..... a tower with blocks.  
a) reading                      b) building                      c) drawing
- 2 The block goes under the .....  
a) bed                      b) table                      c) door

**B Answer the following questions:**

- 3 Where did he look before finding the block? .....
- 4 Who helped Ahmed get the block? .....

**4 Reorder to make sentences:** أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- 1 on – The – table – is – the – book. ....
- 2 room – Samy – in his – playing – was. ....
- 3 toy – the couch – under – is – The. ....
- 4 between – is – The – ball – the chairs. .... 

**5 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 samy was so happy .....
- 2 the toy car was stuck .....
- 3 ramy's sister came to help .....

**6 Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب. 

"Your lost toy car"

(under – behind – in front of)

.....

.....

.....



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

## Vocabulary

|           |             |          |       |            |            |
|-----------|-------------|----------|-------|------------|------------|
| grade     | صف دراسي    | students | طلاب  | trip       | رحلة قصيرة |
| zoo       | حديقة حيوان | lions    | أسود  | monkeys    | قرود       |
| elephants | أفيال       | ticket   | تذكرة | sandwiches | ساندويتشات |
| chips     | رقائق بطاطس | juice    | عصير  | water      | ماء        |

## Verbs

go

يذهب

see

يرى

drink

يشرب



## Warm up

Did you visit the zoo?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه



Last Monday, Grade Three students went on a trip to the zoo. They went by bus. At the zoo, they saw lions, monkeys, and elephants. The ticket was 20 pounds. For lunch, they ate sandwiches and chips. They drank juice and water. Everyone had a good day!

يوم الإثنين الماضي، ذهب طلاب الصف الثالث في رحلة إلى حديقة الحيوان. لقد ذهبوا بالأتوبيس. وفي حديقة الحيوانات، رأوا الأسود والقرود والفيلة. كان ثمن التذكرة 20 جنيهًا. لتناول طعام الغداء، تناولوا السندويتشات ورقائق البطاطس. شربوا العصير والماء. الجميع قضوا يومًا ممتعًا!



# Language in Use

## The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

### Usage الاستخدام

We use the past tense to talk about something that already happened.

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للحديث عن شيء حدث بالفعل.

### Form التكوين

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثاني للفعال

- يتكون التصريف الثاني للفعال مع الأفعال المنتظمة (Regular verbs) بإضافة /ed /d /ied:

e.g. visit + ed = visited / work + ed = worked

معظم الأفعال يضاف إليها ed

e.g. like + d = liked / love + d = loved

إذا انتهى الفعل بـ "e" يضاف إليه "d" فقط

### Examples أمثلة

| ed        |            | d         |            |
|-----------|------------|-----------|------------|
| Base Verb | Past Tense | Base Verb | Past Tense |
| jump      | jumped     | smile     | smiled     |
| climb     | climbed    | close     | closed     |
| walk      | walked     | dance     | danced     |
| play      | played     | like      | liked      |

⚠️ لاحظ: يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط مع yesterday أو أي سنة ماضية.

✓ **Checkpoint** Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I (~~walking~~ – walked) with my cousin to the park.
- 2 Yesterday, Adel (~~finished~~ – finish) his homework early.
- 3 We (~~listening~~ – listened) to music after lunch.
- 4 The rat (~~walk~~ – walked) on the wall.
- 5 My mother (~~bake~~ – baked) cookies yesterday.

⚠️ يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للقواعد.

# Unit 3 Review

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى  
تمكين الطالب من  
مراجعة أهم الأجزاء  
التي وردت في الوحدة.

## Lesson (1)

|             |            |               |           |               |
|-------------|------------|---------------|-----------|---------------|
| house       | منزل       | train station | محطة قطار | قطار          |
| supermarket | سوبر ماركت | museum        | متحف      | مزدحم / مشغول |
| library     | مكتبة عامة | early         | مبكراً    | الغداء        |
| park        | حديقة عامة | shopping      | التسوق    | كبير الحجم    |

## Lesson (2)

|                        |                  |           |        |             |
|------------------------|------------------|-----------|--------|-------------|
| the Cairo Tower        | برج القاهرة      | pictures  | صور    | جمل         |
| the Alexandria Library | مكتبة الإسكندرية | city      | مدينة  | عظيم        |
| the Pyramids of Giza   | أهرامات الجيزة   | adventure | مغامرة | شاحنة كبيرة |
| family                 | عائلة            | holiday   | أجازة  | بطة         |

## Lesson (3)

|         |              |             |       |       |
|---------|--------------|-------------|-------|-------|
| toy car | سيارة لعبة   | happy       | سعيد  | عصا   |
| couch   | كنبة / أريكة | room        | حجرة  | منضدة |
| stuck   | عالق         | curtain     | ستارة | تحت   |
| behind  | خلف          | in front of | أمام  | بين   |

## Lesson (4)

|           |             |          |       |            |
|-----------|-------------|----------|-------|------------|
| grade     | صف دراسي    | students | طلاب  | رحلة قصيرة |
| zoo       | حديقة حيوان | lions    | أسود  | قرود       |
| elephants | أفيال       | ticket   | تذكرة | ساندويتشات |
| chips     | رقائق بطاطس | juice    | عصير  | ماء        |

## Punctuation Tips



**Capital Letters** الحروف الكبيرة A, B, C, D, E, etc.

- At the beginning of the sentences: في بداية الجمل: e.g. • He is in grade two.
- Names of people: أسماء الأشخاص: e.g. • Laila can jump.



**Period** (full stop) النقطة

- At the end of the sentences: في نهاية الجمل: e.g. • Reem is tall.



**Question Mark** علامة الاستفهام

- At the end of the questions: في نهاية الأسئلة: e.g. • How old are you?



## The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

### Form التكوين

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثاني للفعل .....

- يتكون التصريف الثاني للفعل مع الأفعال المنتظمة (Regular verbs) بإضافة /ed /d /ied :

e.g. visit + ed = visited / work + ed = worked

معظم الأفعال يضاف إليها ed

e.g. like + d = liked / love + d = loved

إذا انتهى الفعل بـ "e" يضاف إليه "d" فقط

## Prepositions of Place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان



on على

e.g. The cat is on the chair.



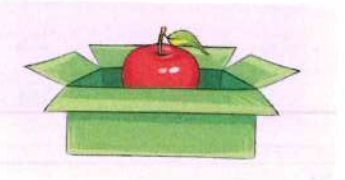
between بين

e.g. The ball is between the shoes.



under تحت

e.g. The dog is under the table.



in داخل/ في

e.g. The apple is in the box.



behind خلف

e.g. The boy is behind the door.



in front of أمام

e.g. The girl is in front of the school.

# Unit 3 Dictation



تهدف هذه الجزئية إلى التأكد من إتقان الطالب لأهم المفردات اللغوية وفهمها باللغة العربية والإنجليزية.

Read and write:

اقرأ واكتب:

|            | الكلمة باللغة العربية | الكلمة باللغة الإنجليزية |                  |
|------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|------------------|
| Lesson (1) | library               | .....                    | محطة قطار        |
|            | park                  | .....                    | في الظهيرة       |
|            | museum                | .....                    | مشغول / مزدحم    |
|            | shopping              | .....                    | منزل             |
|            | train                 | .....                    | سوبر ماركت       |
|            | fun                   | .....                    | في الصباح        |
| Lesson (2) | holiday               | .....                    | برج القاهرة      |
|            | adventure             | .....                    | مكتبة الإسكندرية |
|            | camel                 | .....                    | أهرامات الجيزة   |
|            | back                  | .....                    | صور              |
|            | neck                  | .....                    | مدينة            |
|            | love                  | .....                    | عظيم             |
| Lesson (3) | under                 | .....                    | غرفة             |
|            | between               | .....                    | عصا              |
|            | in front of           | .....                    | عالق             |
|            | on                    | .....                    | في / بداخل       |
|            | couch                 | .....                    | منضدة            |
|            | curtain               | .....                    | سيارة لعبة       |
| Lesson (4) | elephants             | .....                    | قرود             |
|            | trip                  | .....                    | أسود             |
|            | tickets               | .....                    | ماء              |
|            | grade                 | .....                    | عصير             |

Write the missing letters, then put each word in a sentence:

اكتب الحروف الناقصة، ثم ضع كل كلمة في جملة:

1 m-s-um



2 so- -



لتسميع كلمات أكثر خاصة بهذه الوحدة .. اذهب إلى كراسة التسميع آخر الكتاب.



## Unit 3 Writing Corner



تتضمن هذه الصفحة  
جميعه لأهم  
موضوعات الوحدة.

Golden tips for correct writing: نصائح ذهبية للكتابة الصحيحة:



► Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: \_\_\_\_\_

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

Tip1:

ابدأ الجملة وأسماء الأشخاص وأيام الأسبوع  
بحرف كبير "Capital letter".

"Your day"

(morning – library – park)

Tip2:

ضع (full stop) في نهاية الجملة.

My name is Yousef. My day is busy. I get up at six in the morning. At break, I read books at the library. On Friday, I go to the park with my family.

Tip3:

اكتب بخط مرتب وتأكد من كتابتك  
لل كلمات بشكل صحيح correct spelling.

Tip4:

استخدم الكلمات المساعدة في كتابة جمل  
صحيحة.

"A day out"

(pyramids – pictures – happy)

My name is Yara. Yesterday, I visited the great Pyramids of Giza with my family. We took many pictures there. I was very happy. It was the best holiday.

"My weekend activities"

(zoo – animals – sandwiches)

Last weekend, I went on a trip to the zoo. I went by bus. We saw a lot of animals. The ticket was 10 pounds. We ate sandwiches and chips.

► Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: \_\_\_\_\_

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

"A day with your friends"

(weekend – park – trees)

.....

.....

.....



# Student's Book Corner

تدريبات إضافية مأخوذة من كتاب الوزارة.

## 1 Rewrite the sentences using the correct punctuation:

أعد كتابة الجمل باستخدام علامات الترقيم الصحيحة:

1 we went to the amusement park

.....

2 my house is next to the hospital

.....

3 cairo tower is very tall

.....

4 is the shopping mall open today

.....

5 we walked to the supermarket after school

.....

## 2 Circle the words that have the /k/ sound: ضع دائرة حول الكلمات التي تحتوي على الصوت /k/:

1 rain – duck – pen

3 man – sing – pack

2 dog – broke – stick

4 line – log – lock

## 3 Read and choose the correct verb in the past simple tense:

اقرأ واختر الفعل الصحيح في زمن الماضي البسيط:

1 We (cleaned – clean) our hands before eating.



2 I (walk – walked) to school yesterday.



3 I (play – played) with my friend after school.



4 My grandma (bakes – baked) a cake.



5 My cousin (lived – lives) in Aswan.







# Test yourself

30

## Listening



**1** Listen and write the missing sounds: استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

- ① bu\_ \_      ② so\_ \_      ③ o\_ \_      ④ we\_ \_      ⑤ tru\_ \_

## Reading

**2** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

- ① We go to the ..... to read books.  
a) museum      b) supermarket      c) library
- ② The three ..... of Giza are amazing.  
a) parks      b) Pyramids      c) stations
- ③ There is a cat ..... the bed.  
a) between      b) in      c) under
- ④ Grade three students went on a ..... to the zoo.  
a) trip      b) juice      c) pound

**3** Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

2

**(lunch – monkey – zoo – animals)**

Yesterday, my family and I visited the <sup>(1)</sup>..... We saw many <sup>(2)</sup>..... like zebras, lions, and parrots. I liked the <sup>(3)</sup>..... the most because it was funny. We walked around and watched the animals eat and play. Then, we sat under a tree and ate our <sup>(4)</sup>..... We had a lovely time together.

**4** Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

One day, a little boy named Omar lost his favorite toy car. He looked under the bed, but it wasn't there. He opened all the drawers. Still, he couldn't find it. Omar felt very sad. Later, his mother helped him search the room. They found the toy car behind the curtain! Omar was so happy and played with it all day.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 Omar found his toy car .....  
a) under the bed      b) in the drawer      c) behind the curtain
- 2 Omar felt ..... when he lost his toy.  
a) sad      b) happy      c) great

**B Answer the following questions:**

- 3 What did Omar lose? .....
- 4 How did Omar feel after finding the toy? .....

**Writing**

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً: 2

- 1 was – pounds – The – twenty – ticket. ....
- 2 supermarket – to – We – walked – the. ....

**6 Punctuate the following:** ..... ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

- 1 we played at the park .....
- 2 The cairo Tower is very tall .....

**7 Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:** ..... اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 7

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب. 📌

**"My weekend"**

(family – park – pictures)





1



Listen and number the pictures: استمع ورقم الصور:

5

- 1 house 2 park 3 library 4 grass 5 staff



2 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

8

(supermarket – train – library – park)

My family and me were in Alexandria yesterday. We saw the <sup>(1)</sup>..... . It has lots of books. I went to the <sup>(2)</sup>..... to buy some food. We played at a nice <sup>(3)</sup>..... . We bought tickets to take the <sup>(4)</sup>..... to Cairo.

3 Unscramble and write: أعد ترتيب الكلمات واكتب:

5

- 1 hiednb  
2 akrp  
3 usmeum  
4 zajz  
5 owrte

4 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

8

- 1 We live in a big (park – library – house).  
2 We can't take the train without (tickets – rice – lunch).  
3 Our visit to Alexandria was (bad – great – slow). We were happy.  
4 We visited the Pyramids of Giza and rode a (camel – cow – duck).  
5 My ball is (in – between – behind) the door.  
6 I sleep in a big (park – museum – room).  
7 We can sit on the (curtain – couch – train).  
8 At the park, we (eat – go – drink) cold juice.

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

- 1 are you tired  
2 yara is a girl



## Unit 4

# Let's Tell Stories!

هيا نروي القصص!



## Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

### Listening

- identify different emotions in listening tasks.
- recall events from the short stories.

- يتعرف على مشاعر مختلفة في مهام الاستماع.

- يسترجع الأحداث من قصص قصيرة.

### Speaking

- express emotions and respond to questions using complete sentences.
- retell key events from short stories in correct sequence.
- pronounce hard and soft "c" sounds correctly.

- يعبر عن المشاعر ويجيب عن الأسئلة باستخدام جمل كاملة.

- يعيد سرد الأحداث الرئيسية من القصص القصيرة بالتسلسل الصحيح.

- ينطق صوتي ال /k/ و /s/ بطريقة صحيحة.

### Reading

- understand simple sentences expressing emotions.

- يفهم الجمل البسيطة التي تعبر عن المشاعر.

### Writing

- write simple sentences expressing emotions.
- write simple sentences using the past tense and correct punctuation.

- يكتب جملًا بسيطة تعبر عن المشاعر.

- يكتب جملًا بسيطة باستخدام زمن الماضي وعلامات الترقيم الصحيحة.



## A Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

## Our Emotions شعورنا



happy

سعيد



sad

حزين



excited

متحمس



angry

غاضب



shy

خجول



tired

متعب



bored

يشعر بالملل (زهقان)



scared

خائف

## Extra Vocabulary

quickly

بسرعة

sound

صوت soon

قريبًا

fence

سياج (سور)

because

لأن hole

حفرة

free

حر (طليق)

team

فريق proud

فخور

pull

يسحب work

يعمل follow

يتبع

jump

يقفز save

ينقذ am/is

يكون

hear

يسمع stick

يلتصق feel

يشعر

are

يكون see

يرى hold

يمسك

do

يفعل lick

يلعق

## Verbs

## ▶ Listening and speaking:

A: How do you feel?

ماذا تشعر؟

B: I feel so happy!

أنا سعيد جدًا!!

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① I feel (happy – tired). I want to sleep.
- ② I can't find my pen. I feel (excited – sad).
- ③ It's my birthday. I feel (sad – happy).
- ④ My friend is coming. I feel (angry – excited).

Look and read:



Warm up

How do you feel when you help someone?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

آدم وعمر في الحديقة Adam and Omar in the Garden

Adam and Omar were playing in the garden when they heard a cat cry. Then, they quickly followed the sound, and soon they saw the cat stuck in a fence. Because the hole was small, Adam held the fence while Omar carefully pulled the cat out. Finally, the cat jumped free and licked their hands. Since they worked as a team, they saved the cat. They felt happy and proud.



كان آدم وعمر يلعبان في الحديقة عندما سمعا قطة تبكي. ثم تبعوا الصوت بسرعة، وسرعان ما رأيا القطة عالقة في السياج. ولأن الفتحة كانت صغيرة، أمسك آدم بالسياج بينما سحب عمر القطة بحذر. أخيراً، قفزت القطة بحرية ولعقت أيديهما، وبما أنهما عملاً كفريق، فقد أنقذا القطة. شعرا بالسعادة والفخر.

Problem  
المشكلة

They saw the cat **stuck** in a fence.

Solution  
الحل

They **pulled** the cat out.



Tip

Linking words make the story clear and easy to follow.

تجعل كلمات الربط القصة واضحة وسهلة التتابع.

First أولاً Then ثم After that بعد ذلك Finally أخيراً



Checkpoint

Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(pulled – proud – heard – playing)

- 1 Adam and Omar were ..... in the garden.
- 2 They ..... a cat cry.
- 3 Omar carefully ..... the cat out.
- 4 They felt happy and .....



## B Language in Use

• **Past Simple Tense "Irregular verbs":** زمن الماضي البسيط: "الأفعال غير المنتظمة":

**Usage:** We use the past simple tense to talk about something that happened.  
نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للحديث عن شيء حدث.

• **Affirmative Form:** صيغة الإثبات:

التصريف الثانى للفعل + (الفاعل) **Subject**

• **Irregular verbs** are special words! They **DO NOT add (-ed)** to make the past tense.  
Their past tense form is different.

الأفعال غير المنتظمة هي كلمات خاصة! لا يُضاف إليها "ed" لتكوين زمن الماضي. شكلها فى الماضي يكون مختلفًا.

| Irregular Verbs |               | أفعال غير منتظمة |               |
|-----------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|
| Present         | Past          | Present          | Past          |
| am/is           | يكون (للمفرد) | was              | are           |
| hear            | يسمع          | heard            | see           |
| stick           | يلتصق         | stuck            | hold          |
| feel            | يشعر          | felt             | do            |
| come            | يأتى          | came             | go            |
| eat             | يأكل          | ate              | run           |
|                 |               |                  | يكون (للمجمع) |
|                 |               |                  | were          |
|                 |               |                  | saw           |
|                 |               |                  | held          |
|                 |               |                  | did           |
|                 |               |                  | went          |
|                 |               |                  | ran           |

e.g. She **went** to the park. هي ذهبت إلى الحديقة.

✓ **Checkpoint** Choose the correct answer: **SB** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Adam and Omar (**is** – **were**) playing in the garden.
- They (**saw** – **see**) a cat in trouble yesterday.
- The cat (**jumped** – **jump**) free.
- Omar (**pull** – **pulled**) the cat out.
- Both boys (**feels** – **felt**) proud.

## C Phonics Focus



Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

Hard "c" = /k/ sound

- "c" makes a hard /k/ sound when it is followed by (a, o, or u) or at the end of a word as "ck".

- حرف "c" ينطق /k/ عندما يأتي بعده (a، o، أو u) أو عندما يأتي في نهاية الكلمة على شكل "ck".



cat

قطّة



cry

يبكي



stuck

علق بشيء / التصق



licked

لعت



cold

بارد



carry

يحمل



coat

معطف (بالطو)



cup

فنجان

because

لأن carefully

بحرص came

أتى



Checkpoint

Listen and write the missing sounds: استمع و اكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

1



-ry

2



stu \_ \_

3



\_old

4



\_arry





# Homework Time

ذاكر الكلمات حتى  
تتمكن من تسميعها في  
نهاية الوحدة  
في صفحة 145.

▶ Look and write:

انظر واكتب:



happy



sad



excited



angry



shy



tired



bored



scared



Look and write:

انظر واكتب:



cat



cry



stuck



licked

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



cold



carry



coat



cup

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---





# Practice

on Lesson **1**

**1**



**Listen and write the missing sounds:** استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

**1** \_at

**2** li\_ \_ed

**3** \_oat

**4** \_up

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

**1** I feel ..... when I don't have anything to do.

a) scared

b) shy

c) bored

**2** We were ..... before the school trip.

a) sad

b) angry

c) excited

**3** Adam ..... happy and proud yesterday.

a) feel

b) felt

c) feels

**4** Jana was ..... because she didn't sleep well yesterday.

a) happy

b) tired

c) scared

**5** Omar ..... the cat yesterday.

a) save

b) saving

c) saved

**6** I feel ..... when I speak in front of many people.

a) shy

b) tired

c) happy

**7** The boy ..... his homework before dinner yesterday.

a) do

b) did

c) does

**8** I feel ..... when I see a big spider.

a) happy

b) scared

c) bored

**9** Osama was ..... when his brother broke his toy.

a) angry

b) bored

c) shy

Super Question ?

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

**(saw - played - was - garden)**

Sama and Rana were bored yesterday. They went to a (1) .....

They (2) ..... with a ball. They (3) ..... a cat. It (4) ..... very small and nice.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, Ramy listened to a story with his brother. He felt scared at first, but then he laughed. After that, he was happy and talked about it a lot. His brother liked the story too. They wanted to listen to it again.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 Ramy listened to a story with his .....  
a) brother                      b) father                      c) sister
- 2 At first, Ramy felt .....  
a) happy                      b) sad                      c) scared

**B Answer the following questions:**

- 3 When did Ramy listen to a story? .....
- 4 What did Ramy and his brother talk about? .....

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- 1 in – a cat – I – cry – heard – the garden. ....
- 2 felt – happy – We – and – proud. ....
- 3 do – How – feel – you? ....
- 4 pulled – cat – Moaz – out – the ....
- 5 Rana – worked – Nada – a team – as – and. ....



**6 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 finally, the cat jumped free .....
- 2 omar followed the sound .....





Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

## Main Vocabulary

|             |             |         |      |      |      |
|-------------|-------------|---------|------|------|------|
| sunny day   | يوم مشمس    | picture | صورة | knee | ركبة |
| again       | مرة أخرى    | now     | الآن | but  | ولكن |
| felt better | شعر بالتحسن |         |      |      |      |

## Irregular Verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

## Present

## Past

|      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| go   | يذهب | went |
| draw | يرسم | drew |
| fall | يسقط | fell |

## Regular Verbs

أفعال منتظمة

## Present

## Past

|       |       |        |
|-------|-------|--------|
| smile | يبتسم | smiled |
| help  | يساعد | helped |

## ▶ Listening and Speaking:

A: How did you feel when you went to the zoo?

كيف شعرت عندما ذهبت إلى حديقة الحيوان؟

B: I was excited when I went to the zoo.

كنت متحمسًا عندما ذهبت إلى حديقة الحيوان.

A: How did you feel when you watched a scary movie?

كيف شعرت عندما شاهدت فيلمًا مخيفًا؟

B: I felt scared when I watched a scary movie.

شعرت بالخوف عندما شاهدت فيلمًا مخيفًا.



## Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

- Yesterday, my sister (cried – smiled) when she saved the cat.
- My friend (hurt – helped) me stand up.
- My sister (said – drew) a picture.
- Rana was tired, but she (felt – fell) better.

## Reading and Writing

انظر واقرأ:

### Look and read:

One sunny day, Sara went to the park because she was bored. She drew a picture with her pencil. She was happy **and** smiled at her friend. **Then** she fell and hurt her knee. Sara felt sad and scared. Her friend helped her stand up. Sara said, "thank you" and smiled again. Now she was tired, **but** she felt better.



في يوم مشمس، ذهبت سارة إلى الحديقة؛ لأنها كانت تشعر بالملل. رسمت صورة بقلمها الرصاص. كانت سعيدة وابتسمت لصديقتها. ثم سقطت وألمتها ركبتها. شعرت سارة بالحزن والخوف. ساعدتها صديقتها على الوقوف. قالت سارة "شكرًا" وابتسمت مرة أخرى. الآن كانت متعبة، لكنها شعرت بتحسن.

### Notes

**Then:** We use "Then" to talk about what happens next.

نستخدم "ثم" للحديث عما يحدث بعد ذلك.

**But:** We use "but" to talk about something different.

نستخدم "ولكن" للحديث عن شيء مختلف.

**And:** We use "and" to add more or join.

نستخدم "و" لإضافة المزيد أو للربط بين الأشياء.

### ✓ Checkpoint 1. Complete using: "then, but, and": SB أأكمل باستخدام "then, but, and": SB

- ① Sara played on the swings, ..... she fell.
- ② She was hurt, ..... her friend helped her.
- ③ Her friend helped, ..... Sara felt better.

### 2. Read and complete: ..... اقرأ وأكمل:

(hurt – scared – park – was)

- ① One sunny day, Sara went to the .....
- ② Sara went there because she ..... bored.
- ③ Sara fell and ..... her knee.
- ④ Sara felt sad and .....



## B Phonics Focus



Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

**Soft "c" = /s/ sound**

"c" makes the soft /s/ sound when followed by (e, i, or y).

- حرف "c" ينطق /s/ عندما يأتي بعده (e, i, أو y).



face

وجه



nice

رائع



city

مدينة



pencil

قلم رصاص



fence

سياج (سور)



ice

ثلج



cent

سنت (وحدة نقدية)

**Checkpoint**

**Listen and write the missing sounds:** استمع و اكتب الأصوات الناقصة :

1



fa\_e

2



\_ity

3



\_ent

4



pen\_il

Look and write:

انظر واكتب:



face



nice



city



pencil



fence



ice



cent





# Practice

on Lesson **2**

**1**



**Listen and write the missing sounds:**

استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

**1** ni\_e

**2** fen\_e

**3** i\_e

**4** fa\_e

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

**1** The cat was stuck in the .....

a) face

b) fence

c) pencil

**2** Jana ..... and hurt her knee yesterday.

a) fall

b) falls

c) fell

**3** I ..... excited when I went to the zoo.

a) is

b) was

c) are

**4** My little brother draws with his .....

a) ice

b) city

c) pencil

**5** Sara went to the park ..... she was bored.

a) but

b) then

c) because

**6** Moaz ..... to the park yesterday.

a) went

b) go

c) goes

**7** Yara ..... sad yesterday.

a) feels

b) felt

c) feeling

**3 Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: **SB**

One sunny day, Sara went to the park with her friend Aya. She played on the swings. Then, she fell and hurt her knee. Her friend helped her.

Sara smiled and felt better.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

1 Sara went to the ..... with her friend.

a) school

b) hospital

c) park

2 Sara hurt her .....

a) nose

b) knee

c) hand

**B Answer the following questions:**

3 What did Sara play on? .....

4 How did Sara feel after her friend helped her? .....

**4 Reorder to make sentences:** ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

1 sad – felt – and – Ramy – scared. ....

2 mother – was – yesterday – My – tired. ....

3 hurt – My – her – knee – sister. ....

4 city – I – the – park – went – to.  .....

**5 Punctuate the following:** ..... ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1 omar watched a scary movie .....

2 one sunny day, eman went to the city park. ....

**6 Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:**

..... اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب.

“My visit to the zoo”

(saw – felt – excited)





Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

## Vocabulary

|                |       |                |     |                |                  |
|----------------|-------|----------------|-----|----------------|------------------|
| nervous (adj.) | متوتر | before         | قبل | football match | مباراة كرة القدم |
| when           | عندما | worried (adj.) | قلق | mistakes       | أخطاء            |
| after          | بعد   | goal           | هدف | himself        | نفسه             |

## Verbs

start

يبدأ

score

يسجل

win

يفوز

Omar was nervous before his first football match. When the match started, he was worried about making mistakes. But after he scored a goal, Omar felt proud of himself. He was happy when his team won the game.

كان عمر متوترًا قبل أول مباراة كرة قدم له. وعندما بدأت المباراة، كان قلقًا من ارتكاب الأخطاء. ولكن بعد أن سجل هدفًا، شعر عمر بالفخر بنفسه. وكان سعيدًا عندما فاز فريقه بالمباراة.



## Checkpoint

1. Choose the correct word: (SB)

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة:

- ① Omar was (nervous – happy) before the match.
- ② He was (worried – excited) about making mistakes.
- ③ He (felt – feel) proud after scoring a goal.
- ④ He was (sad – happy) when his team won.

2. Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(worried – won – nervous – scored)

- ① I was ..... before my first tennis match.
- ② I was ..... about making mistakes.
- ③ I ..... a goal.
- ④ My team ..... the game.



# Practice

on Lesson **3**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 Salma was ..... before her exam.  
a) happy                                      b) worried                                      c) excited
- 2 Ahmed ..... proud after scoring a goal.  
a) felt                                              b) went                                              c) hurt
- 3 My team ..... the game yesterday.  
a) win                                              b) wins                                              c) won
- 4 Eman was worried, ..... she didn't stop.  
a) after                                              b) and                                              c) but
- 5 My brother ..... a goal.  
a) felt                                              b) scored                                              c) started
- 6 He was ..... when his team won the game.  
a) sad                                              b) tired                                              c) happy
- 7 It was my first football .....  
a) name                                              b) number                                              c) match

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

**(mistakes - scored - was - excited)**

My brother played a football match yesterday. He was worried about making  
 (1) ..... . But after he (2) ..... a goal. He felt (3) ..... . I (4) .....  
 proud of my brother.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hassan was nervous before his first football match. When the match started, he was worried about making mistakes. But after he scored a goal, Hassan felt excited. Hassan's team won the game.



**A** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1** Hassan was nervous ..... the match.  
a) in                      b) after                      c) before
- 2** Hassan was ..... about making mistakes.  
a) excited                      b) worried                      c) happy

**B Answer the following questions:**

- ③ When did Hassan feel excited? .....
- ④ Who won the game? .....

- ① won – team – My – game – the. ....
- ② proud – I – of – felt – myself. ....
- ③ tired – was – I – nervous – and. ....
- ④ match – watched – Eman – a football. ....
- ⑤ about – Ola – making – was – mistakes – worried. ....

**5 Punctuate the following:** \_\_\_\_\_ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- ① hossam scored a goal and felt proud .....
- ② ehab was nervous before his first football match .....

مجاہد عنہ آخر الكتاب.

**“A football match”**

(played – scored – won)

# Unit 4 Review

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى  
تمكين الطالب من  
مراجعة أهم الأجزاء  
التي وردت في الوحدة.

## Lesson (1)

|         |       |       |      |         |                     |        |      |
|---------|-------|-------|------|---------|---------------------|--------|------|
| happy   | سعيد  | sad   | حزين | excited | متحمس               | angry  | غاضب |
| shy     | خجول  | tired | متعب | bored   | يشعر بالملل (زهقان) | scared | خائف |
| quickly | بسرعة | sound | صوت  | free    | حُر (طليق)          | team   | فريق |
| proud   | فخور  | feel  | يشعر | pull    | يسحب                | save   | ينقذ |

## Lesson (2)

|             |             |         |      |      |      |
|-------------|-------------|---------|------|------|------|
| sunny day   | يوم مشمس    | picture | صورة | knee | ركبة |
| again       | مرة أخرى    | now     | الآن | but  | ولكن |
| felt better | شعر بالتحسن |         |      |      |      |

## Lesson (3)

|         |       |         |     |                |                |
|---------|-------|---------|-----|----------------|----------------|
| nervous | متوتر | before  | قبل | football match | مباراة كرة قدم |
| when    | عندما | worried | قلق | mistakes       | أخطاء          |
| after   | بعد   | goal    | هدف | himself        | نفسه           |

## Phonics

Hard "c" /k/

|       |      |      |              |       |       |         |     |           |      |      |     |
|-------|------|------|--------------|-------|-------|---------|-----|-----------|------|------|-----|
| cat   | قطعة | cry  | يبكى         | stuck | التصق | licked  | لعت | cold      | بارد |      |     |
| carry | يحمل | coat | معطف (بالطو) | cup   | فنجان | because | لأن | carefully | بحرص | came | أتى |

Soft "c" /s/

|      |     |      |                  |      |       |        |          |       |            |
|------|-----|------|------------------|------|-------|--------|----------|-------|------------|
| face | وجه | nice | رائع             | city | مدينة | pencil | قلم رصاص | fence | سياج (سور) |
| ice  | ثلج | cent | سنت (وحدة نقدية) |      |       |        |          |       |            |

## Language in Use

### Past Simple Tense "Irregular verbs":

زمن الماضي البسيط: "الأفعال غير المنتظمة":

Usage: We use the past simple tense to talk about something that happened.

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للحديث عن شيء حدث.

#### Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

التصريف الثاني للفعل + (الفاعل) Subject

- Irregular verbs are special words! They **DO NOT** add -ed to make the past tense. Their past tense form is different.

الأفعال غير المنتظمة هي كلمات خاصة! لا يُضاف إليها "ed" لتكوين زمن الماضي. شكلها في الماضي يكون مختلفًا.

e.g. go → went

e.g. eat → ate

e.g. come → came

e.g. She **went** to the park.

هي ذهبت إلى الحديقة.





تهدف هذه الجزئية إلى التأكد من إتقان الطالب لأهم المفردات اللغوية وفهمها باللغة العربية والإنجليزية.

Read and write:

اقرأ واكتب:

|            | الكلمة باللغة العربية | الكلمة باللغة الإنجليزية |                     |
|------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| Lesson (1) | happy                 | .....                    | حزين                |
|            | excited               | .....                    | غاضب                |
|            | tired                 | .....                    | خجول                |
|            | scared                | .....                    | يشعر بالملل (زهقان) |
|            | proud                 | .....                    | حُر (طليق)          |
|            | cry                   | .....                    | التصق               |
|            | coat                  | .....                    | قطعة                |
|            | cold                  | .....                    | يحمل                |
| Lesson (2) | licked                | .....                    | بحرص                |
|            | sunny day             | .....                    | صورة                |
|            | again                 | .....                    | الآن                |
|            | felt better           | .....                    | ولكن                |
|            | face                  | .....                    | سنت (وحدة نقدية)    |
|            | city                  | .....                    | قلم رصاص            |
|            | ice                   | .....                    | رائع                |
| Lesson (3) | nervous               | .....                    | قبل                 |
|            | score                 | .....                    | مباراة كرة القدم    |
|            | after                 | .....                    | أخطاء               |
|            | win                   | .....                    | هدف                 |

Write the missing letters, then put each word in a sentence:

اكتب الحروف الناقصة، ثم ضع كل كلمة في جملة:

1 li— —ed



2 —en—il



## Unit 4 Writing Corner



تتضمن هذه الصفحة  
تجميعاً لأهم  
موضوعات الوحدة.

Golden tips for correct writing: نصائح ذهبية للكتابة الصحيحة:



- Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

Tip1:

ابدأ الجملة أو أسماء الأشخاص  
بحرف كبير "Capital letter".

"My friend's help"  
(friend – hurt – helped)

Tip2:

استخدم الفاصلة السفلية  
عندما تكتب قائمة أشياء أو عبارات.

One sunny day, I went to the park with my friend Samar. We were happy.  
Then, I fell and hurt my knee. Samar helped me stand up.

Tip3:

ضع Period (full stop)  
في نهاية الجملة.

Tip4:

استخدم الكلمات المساعدة في  
كتابة جمل صحيحة.

"Helping animals"  
(garden – cry – stuck)

We were playing in the garden. We heard a dog cry. It was stuck in a hole.  
We pulled the dog out.

"My emotions"  
(went – excited – scared)

I went to the zoo. I was very excited. I watched many animals, but  
I was scared of the lion.

- Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

"My team"

(played – scored – won)





# Student's Book Corner

تدريبات إضافية مأخوذة من كتاب الوزارة.

**1 Sort the words into the correct box:** صنف الكلمات في الجدول الصحيح:

Word List:

cat – city – ice – cold – pencil – coat – nice – face – cup – cent

Soft "C" Sound /s/

Hard "C" Sound /k/

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |

**2 Choose the correct verb in the past simple tense:** اختر الفعل الصحيح في زمن الماضي البسيط:

- 1 Omar (is – was) nervous before the match.
- 2 He (start – started) playing.
- 3 He (score – scored) a goal.
- 4 He (feel – felt) proud.
- 5 His team (win – won) the game.

**3 Add a period or question mark to the sentences:** أضف نقطة أو علامة استفهام إلى الجمل:

- 1 Do you like going to the amusement park .....
- 2 We went to the supermarket yesterday .....
- 3 Where is the nearest hospital .....
- 4 I saw the Pyramids with my family .....
- 5 Did you visit the Cairo Tower last year .....



# Test yourself

30

## Listening

1



Listen and write the missing sounds: استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

① -ity

② -up

③ -ent

④ -at

## Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

① I ..... my friend when she fell.

a) helps

b) helped

c) helping

② Ahmed ..... the cat yesterday.

a) save

b) saving

c) saved

③ Ramy ..... the cat out.

a) scored

b) won

c) pulled

④ My team won the game and I was .....

a) excited

b) angry

c) sad

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(picture - excited - nice - was)

I am Hana. My brother Youssef <sup>(1)</sup> ..... bored. He drew a <sup>(2)</sup> .....  
with his pencil. It was a <sup>(3)</sup> ..... face. My brother felt <sup>(4)</sup> .....

4

Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

Ali helped his friend Adam yesterday. He carried his books because Adam felt tired. Then, he gave him some water. Adam smiled and said, "Thank you".



**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

1 Ali ..... Adam's books.

a) drew

b) felt

c) carried

2 Adam felt ..... yesterday.

a) scared

b) tired

c) happy

**B Answer the following questions:**

3 Who did Ali help? .....

4 What did Adam say? .....

**Writing**

5 **Reorder to make sentences:** ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

2

1 me – stand – My – helped – sister – up. ....

2 went to – Mariam – with – the park – her friend. ....

6 **Punctuate the following:** ..... ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

1 judy felt sad and scared .....

2 how did Fatma feel when she won .....

7 **Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:** ..... اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

7

مجاوب عنه آخر الكتاب.

**"My birthday"**

(felt – excited – gift)

# Unit 4 Al-Azhar Corner

30



1 Listen and number the pictures: استمع ورقم الصور:

5

- 1 tired 2 fence 3 coat 4 bored 5 angry



2 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملاً الفراغات:

8

(heard – helped – proud – knee)

We were in the street. We <sup>(1)</sup> ..... a little boy cry. He fell and hurt his <sup>(2)</sup> ..... We <sup>(3)</sup> ..... him. We felt happy and <sup>(4)</sup> .....

3 Unscramble and write: أعد ترتيب الكلمات واكتب:

5

1



hsy

2



gnary

3



ceaf

4



arycr

5



ppyah

4 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

8

- 1 They (am – is – were) playing in the garden yesterday.
- 2 He (held – hold – holding) the fence yesterday.
- 3 She (came – come – coming) from Cairo yesterday.
- 4 We (feels – felt – feeling) happy when our team won the game.
- 5 They (followed – saved – pulled) the sound last night.
- 6 My sister (played – drew – went) a nice picture last week.
- 7 My team (scored – ate – came) a goal and won the game.
- 8 I felt (happy – excited – scared) when I watched a scary movie.

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

- 1 ramy saved the cat .....
- 2 Ali and mona worked as a team .....



# Al-Adwaa Revision - November

المراجعة الشهرية الخاصة بمقرر شهر نوفمبر.



**1 Listen and write the missing sounds:** استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

**A**

- ① \_ity      ② bu\_ \_      ③ \_ice      ④ tru\_ \_

**B**

- ① \_at      ② mi\_ \_      ③ du\_ \_      ④ be\_ \_

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

**A**

- ① We can buy food at the .....  
a) supermarket      b) library      c) house
- ② The boy was ..... after losing the game.  
a) excited      b) happy      c) angry
- ③ I helped my mother ..... the kitchen.  
a) in      b) on      c) under
- ④ Hamza ..... nervous before the match yesterday.  
a) is      b) was      c) were
- ⑤ The swings in the ..... are fun.  
a) museum      b) park      c) train station
- ⑥ The dog is ..... the two kids.  
a) between      b) in      c) next

**B**

- ① The train arrived late at the .....  
a) supermarket      b) train station      c) house
- ② We ..... the zoo last weekend.  
a) visit      b) visits      c) visited
- ③ Sarah was hurt, ..... her friend helped her.  
a) then      b) but      c) because
- ④ The teacher was ..... when the class was quiet and tidy.  
a) angry      b) happy      c) shy
- ⑤ My friend is ..... and doesn't talk much.  
a) happy      b) shy      c) angry
- ⑥ Lina ..... to the park last month.  
a) go      b) goes      c) went

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

#### A (library – station – park – supermarket)

This morning, we went to the <sup>(1)</sup> ..... to play. After playing, we walked to the <sup>(2)</sup> ..... I picked a book to read. Then, we took the bus to the <sup>(3)</sup> ..... to buy some food. Finally, we waited at the train <sup>(4)</sup> ..... to go back home. I had a happy day!

#### B (museum – angry – excited – park)

I was bored when I went to the museum with my family. But soon, I felt <sup>(1)</sup> ..... to see the old things and pictures. After the <sup>(2)</sup> ....., we went to the <sup>(3)</sup> ..... to play games. I felt <sup>(4)</sup> ..... when I lost the game, but I still had fun with my friends.

### 4 Reorder to make sentences: أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

#### A

- ① fell – knee – hurt – her – and – Mariam. .....
- ② Tower – you – the – visit – Did – Cairo? .....

#### B

- ① went – the library – They – to. ....
- ② walked – school – She – yesterday – to. ....

### 5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

#### A

- ① do you like going to the amusement park .....
- ② there is milk in the supermarket .....

#### B

- ① the shy boy didn't want to play .....
- ② did you visit the cairo Tower last year? .....



# Al-Adwaa Tests - November

## Model

1



**1 Listen and write the missing sounds:** ————— استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

- ① cu \_ \_      ② so \_ \_      ③ le \_ \_      ④ ni \_ e

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:** ————— اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① His team ..... the game last month.  
a) win                                      b) wins                                      c) won
- ② She played with her friends at the .....  
a) park                                      b) museum                                      c) library
- ③ We waited for the train at the .....  
a) school                                      b) train station                                      c) park
- ④ She felt ..... when she watched a scary movie.  
a) shy                                      b) scared                                      c) tired
- ⑤ The pencil is ..... the notebook and the ruler.  
a) in                                      b) between                                      c) on
- ⑥ You can borrow books from the .....  
a) library                                      b) museum                                      c) park
- ⑦ We ate lunch ..... the game.  
a) and                                      b) but                                      c) after
- ⑧ I ..... fish and rice yesterday.  
a) eat                                      b) ate                                      c) eating

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

**(museum – train station – library – supermarket)**

Yesterday, I went to the <sup>(1)</sup> ..... with my family. I saw many old things. After that, we visited the <sup>(2)</sup> ..... to borrow some books. Then, we went to the <sup>(3)</sup> ..... to buy food. Finally, we waited at the <sup>(4)</sup> ..... to take the train home.

## Model

2

1



Listen and write the missing sounds:

استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

1 o \_ \_

2 \_ ent

3 mi \_ \_

4 tru \_ \_

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1

We ..... a big cake at the party last month.

a) see

b) saw

c) seeing

2

I live in a big .....

a) house

b) park

c) museum

3

She was ..... to meet new friends.

a) excited

b) angry

c) tired

4

The cat is hiding ..... the couch.

a) under

b) in

c) between

5

You can read books in the .....

a) supermarket

b) library

c) museum

6

Malek ..... his homework yesterday.

a) did

b) do

c) does

7

I felt happy, ..... I was very tired.

a) so

b) but

c) because

8

They ..... to the zoo last weekend.

a) go

b) went

c) going

3

Reorder to make sentences:

أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

1

the - visited - We - Pyramids of Giza.

2

is - nearest - the - Where - hospital?

3

park - place - is - The - nice - a.

4

yesterday - she - did - do - What?

5

excited - was - Farida - birthday - on - her.



## Model 3 Al-Azhar

1



Listen and number the pictures:

استمع ورقم الصور:

1

supermarket

2

train station

3

truck

4

happy

5

cup



2

Read and fill in the gaps:

اقرأ واملاً الفراغات:

(excited – park – next to – between)

Yesterday, I went to the museum with my family. It was <sup>(1)</sup>..... the big park. I was very <sup>(2)</sup>..... to see the old things inside. The museum is <sup>(3)</sup>..... the supermarket and the <sup>(4)</sup>..... . We had so much fun!

3

Unscramble and write:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات واكتب:

1



blel

2



agnry

3



liryrab

4



syh

5



ecenf

4

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Nada (wears – wore – wearing) a red dress yesterday.
- 2 Omar was (bored – excited – sad) when he got a gift.
- 3 The ball is (between – under – next) the table and the chair.
- 4 You can buy food at the (park – library – supermarket).
- 5 We (have – had – having) a lot of fun last Friday.
- 6 The train station is (next to – between – on) the museum.
- 7 She was (excited – sad – happy) because she lost her toy.
- 8 I like apples, (so – and – but) I don't like bananas.

5

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 Did you go to the museum last friday .....
- 2 i saw the Pyramids with my family .....





# Module 3

**Unit 5** Together Is Better

**Unit 6** Dare to Dream



# Unit 5

# Together Is Better

معا أفضل



## Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

### Listening

- identify different chores and teamwork actions.
- recognize different action verbs.

يتعرف على المهام المنزلية المختلفة وأعمال الفريق.  
يميز أفعال الحركة المختلفة.

### Speaking

- retell events from the short stories and dialogs.
- pronounce words with hard and soft "g" sounds correctly.

يسرد الأحداث من القصص القصيرة والحوارات.  
ينطق صوتي /g/ و /dʒ/ بشكل صحيح.

### Reading

- read short stories and dialogs that include teamwork expressions, action verbs, and words with hard and soft "g" sounds.

يقرأ القصص القصيرة والحوارات التي تشمل تعابير العمل الجماعي، وأفعال الحركة، والكلمات ذات صوتي /g/ و /dʒ/.

### Writing

- write simple sentences about teamwork and how to help.
- write simple sentences using action verbs and correct punctuation.

يكتب جملًا بسيطة عن العمل الجماعي وكيفية المساعدة.  
يكتب جملًا بسيطة باستخدام أفعال الحركة وعلامات الترقيم الصحيحة.





Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

## Main Vocabulary



clean

ينظف



tidy up the bed

ترتب السرير



share

يشارك



care

يهتم



win

يفوز



cheer

يهتف / يشجع



plant

يزرع



donate

تتبرع

## Extra Vocabulary

teamwork

العمل الجماعي

match

مباراة

chores

أعمال منزلية

living room

غرفة المعيشة

table

مائدة

floor

أرضية

## Verbs

hug

يعانق

ask

يسأل/ يطلب

work

يعمل

smile

يبتسم



## Checkpoint

## 1. Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

1

clean

2

care

3

tidy up the bed

4

win



## 2. Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1

I (share – care) my food with my sister.

2

Mom (plants – donates) clothes.

3

They (cheer – plant) trees in the garden.

4

Dad always (wins – cheers) for his favorite team.



## Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



### Warm up

Do you help at home?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



## Having Fun الاستمتاع بالوقت



Mona and Karim are at home. Their mother asks them to do some chores. First, they tidy up the living room. Then, they clean the table and the floor. Mona and Karim work together and share the chores. They are happy to help. Finally, the house looks clean. Their mother smiles and says, "Good job, team!"

منى وكريم في المنزل. تطلب والدتهما منهما القيام ببعض الأعمال المنزلية. أولاً، يرتبان غرفة المعيشة. ثم ينظفان الطاولة والأرضية. تعمل منى وكريم معاً ويتقاسمان المهام. يشعران بالسعادة لمساعدتهما. في النهاية، يبدو المنزل نظيفاً. تبسم والدتهما وتقول: «أحسنتما يا فريق.»



### Tip

- يمكن استخدام **clean** كفعل وصفة.

e.g. They **clean** the table. فعل

The table looks **clean**. صفة



### Checkpoint

Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(happy – Then – home – tidy up)

- 1 Mona and Karim are at .....
- 2 First, they ..... the living room.
- 3 ....., they clean the table.
- 4 Mona and Karim are ..... to help.

Look and write:

انظر واكتب:



clean



tidy up the bed



share



care



win



cheer



plant



donate





# Practice

on Lesson **1**

**1** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① My father ..... flowers in the garden.  
a) donates                      b) plants                      c) cheers
- ② My favorite team ..... the game.  
a) wins                      b) cares                      c) cleans up
- ③ My sister always ..... chores with me.  
a) cares                      b) wins                      c) shares
- ④ Hana tidies up the ..... every morning.  
a) chores                      b) bed                      c) match
- ⑤ Mom always ..... for my little brother.  
a) shares                      b) wins                      c) cares
- ⑥ Let's play a football .....  
a) clothes                      b) match                      c) chores
- ⑦ The house ..... clean.  
a) wins                      b) looks                      c) cheers
- ⑧ What clothes do you want to .....?  
a) plant                      b) cheer                      c) donate



**2** Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

**(job – First – clean – share)**

Ali and Sara like to help at home. <sup>(1)</sup> ....., they wash the dishes.  
 Then, they tidy up the bed. They work together and <sup>(2)</sup> ..... the  
 chores. The kitchen looks <sup>(3)</sup> ..... Their father smiles and says,  
 "Good <sup>(4)</sup> ....., team!"

**3 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Omar and Habiba are at home. Mom asks them to do some chores. First, they clean the table. Then, they tidy up the living room. Finally, they clean the floor. The floor looks clean. Mom is happy now.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 Omar and Habiba are at .....  
a) school                      b) park                      c) home
- 2 The floor looks .....  
a) dirty                      b) clean                      d) green

**B Answer the following questions:**

- 3 What do they do first?  
.....
- 4 How does Mom feel now?  
.....

**4 Reorder to make sentences:** أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- 1 donates – Ahmed – clothes.  
.....
- 2 win – They – the – match – football.  
.....
- 3 clean – Then, – we – the table.  
.....
- 4 the – Finally, – house – clean – looks. 

**5 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 karim and mona are at home.  
.....
- 2 first, they clean the kitchen  
.....



## A Listening and Speaking



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

## Vocabulary

plants  
woodنباتات  
خشبpuddle  
bridgeبركة ماء  
كوبرىpiece of  
tailقطعة من  
ذيل

## Verbs

cross  
findيعبر  
يجدwag  
comeيهز  
يأتى

Omar, Youssef, and Ziad went to the park. There were green plants everywhere. They saw a big puddle. It was too big to jump over. Omar found a piece of wood. Youssef and Ziad helped him make a good bridge. They crossed over the bridge and played. A dog came by and wagged its tail. They were happy.



ذهب عمر ويوسف وزياذ إلى الحديقة ورأوا نباتات خضراء في كل مكان. لاحظوا بركة ماء كبيرة لم يستطيعوا القفز فوقها. فوجد عمر قطعة خشب، وساعده يوسف وزياذ في صنع جسر، نجحوا في عبوره ولعبوا، ثم مر كلب وهز ذيله ففرحوا جميعاً.



## Checkpoint

Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(wagged – Omar – park – puddle)

- ① Omar, Youssef, and Ziad were in the .....
- ② They saw a big .....
- ③ ..... found a piece of wood.
- ④ A dog came by and ..... its tail.

## B Phonics Focus



Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

**g** /g/ sound

“g” has a hard sound when followed by: (a, o, or u) or at the end of a word.

ينطق صوت /g/ عندما يكون متبوعاً بالحروف الآتية (a / o / u) .

e.g. game – dog



**gum**  
لبان (علكة)



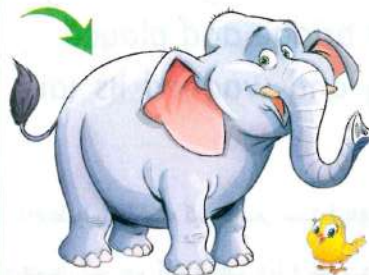
**dog**  
كلب



**good**  
جيد



**green**  
أخضر



**big**  
كبير



**Checkpoint**

استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة: Listen and write the missing sounds:



bi \_



do \_



\_ reen



\_ um



## C Reading and Writing



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

### Vocabulary

project

مشروع ideas

أفكار care

اهتمام

### Verbs

agree

يوافق

start

يبدأ

show

يوضح

finish

ينهى

draw

يرسم

write

يكتب

### We Share, We Care نحن نشارك، نحن نهتم

Salma and Youssef had a project at school. At first, they couldn't agree on what to do. Then, they started to share ideas. Salma wrote, and Youssef drew. When Salma felt tired, Youssef helped her. They showed care and worked well together. Finally, they finished the project. Their teacher was happy and said, "Good job!"



كان لدى سلمى ويوسف مشروع في المدرسة، في البداية لم يتفقا على ما يجب فعله، ثم بدأ بتبادل الأفكار حيث كتبت سلمى ورسم يوسف، وعندما تعبت سلمى ساعدها يوسف، وأظهرا تعاونا جيدا حتى أنهيا المشروع أخيراً، ففرحت المعلمة وقالت: "أحسنتما!"

### Problem

المشكلة

Salma and Youssef **couldn't agree** on what to do.

### Solution

الحل

They **shared** ideas.



### Checkpoint

Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(Good – drew – project – happy)

- ① Salma and Youssef had a ..... at school.
- ② Salma wrote and Youssef .....
- ③ The teacher was .....
- ④ The teacher said "..... job!".

## D Language in Use

### Action verbs أفعال الحركة

**Action verbs** are words that show what someone does. They tell us about an action.

أفعال الحركة هي كلمات تُظهر ما يفعله الشخص. إنها تخبرنا عن عمل أو حركة.

e.g.

help يساعد



Salma **helps** Youssef with the project.  
تساعد سلمى يوسف في المشروع.

solve يحل



They **solve** the problem together.  
يحلان المشكلة معًا.

find يجد



Youssef **finds** a good idea.  
يجد يوسف فكرة جيدة.

work يعمل



They **work** as a team.  
يعملان كفريق واحد.

plan يخطط



They **plan** their project first.  
يخططان للمشروع أولاً.

fix يصلح



Salma **fixes** the poster.  
تُصلح سلمى الملصق.

agree يتفق



They **agree** on what to do.  
يتفقان على ما يجب فعله.



### Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① I (**agree** – help) my mom tidy the bed.
- ② Dad can't (**find** – plan) his keys.
- ③ They (**work** – fix) the car.
- ④ We (**fix** – work) on a school project.
- ⑤ My friend helps me (**find** – solve) the problem.

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للقواعد.





# Writing

► Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:



**Tip**



**Capital letters** الحروف الكبيرة

- Capital letters ..... A, B, C, D, E, etc.
- Small letters ..... a, b, c, d, e, etc.

We use capital letters at the beginning of the sentence.

نستخدم الحروف الكبيرة في بداية الجملة.

e.g. Salma wrote and Youssef drew.



**Period** (full stop) النقطة

We use a period (.) at the end of the sentence.

نستخدم النقطة في نهاية الجملة.

e.g. They showed care and worked together.



**Question Mark** علامة الاستفهام

When we write questions, we use a question mark “?” at the end of the question.

نستخدم علامة الاستفهام في نهاية السؤال.

e.g. What did they do first?



**Comma** الفاصلة السفلية

We put a comma “,” after (First – Then – Finally).

نضع الفاصلة السفلية بعد (أولاً – بعد ذلك – في النهاية).

e.g. Finally, the teacher was happy.



**Checkpoint**

**Rewrite each sentence with correct punctuation:**

**SB**

أعد كتابة الجمل مستخدماً علامات الترقيم الصحيحة:

- 1 salma and youssef had a project at school .....
- 2 at first they didn't agree .....
- 3 then they started to share ideas .....

Look and write:

انظر واكتب:



gum



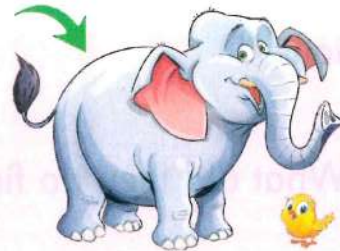
dog



good



green



big





# Practice

on Lesson **2**

**1**



**Listen and write the missing sounds:** **SB** ————— استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

**1** — um

**2** do —

**3** — ood

**4** — reen

**2**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:** ————— اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

**1** We ..... the trip before the school holiday.

a) plan

b) find

c) work

**2** People need a bridge to ..... the lake.

a) agree on

b) jump in

c) cross over

**3** Mariam ..... a book in the library.

a) finds

b) agrees

c) plans

**4** Mona ..... me with my new project.

a) solves

b) helps

c) fixes

**5** Can you ..... the car?

a) fix

b) solve

c) agree

**6** We share ..... when we work together.



a) ideas

b) puddles

c) parks

**3**

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

**(team – ideas – agree – drew)**

Nada and Hani had a project at school. At first, they couldn't <sup>(1)</sup> .....

on what to do. Then, they started to share <sup>(2)</sup> ..... . Nada wrote

the information. Hani <sup>(3)</sup> ..... the graph. They worked together as

a <sup>(4)</sup> .....

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Omar, Youssef, and Ziad went to the park. There were green plants everywhere. They saw a big puddle. It was too big to jump over. Omar found a piece of wood. Youssef and Ziad helped him make a good bridge. They crossed over the bridge and played.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 Omar, Youssef, and Ziad saw a big .....  
a) bird                                      b) lake                                      c) puddle
- 2 Youssef and Ziad used the piece of wood to make a good .....  
a) puddle                                      b) bridge                                      c) toy

**B Answer the following questions:**

- 3 Where did Omar, Youssef, and Ziad go?  
.....

- 4 What did Omar find?  
.....

**5 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 heba and rana are at school. ....
- 2 First they make the poster ....
- 3 do you like teamwork ....
- 4 Salma wrote and youssef drew ....

**6 Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: .....

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب.

**“Teamwork at school”**

(project – agree – tired)



## Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

coach

مدرب

fun (adj.)

ممتع

fair (adj.)

عادل / منصف

## Regular Verbs

أفعال منتظمة

## Present

## Past

score

يحرز هدفًا

scored

pass

يمر الكرة

passed

start

يبدأ

started

cheer

يهتف

cheered

نحن نفوز معًا! We win together!

Omar and his friends played football at school. At first, they all wanted to score. Then, their coach said, "Work as a team!" They started to pass the ball and help each other. Omar passed to Karim, and Karim scored. Everyone cheered. They didn't win alone — they won together. Teamwork made the game fun and fair.



لعب عمر وأصدقاؤه كرة القدم في المدرسة. في البداية، أراد الجميع تسجيل الأهداف. ثم قال مدربهم: "اعملوا كفريق واحد!" فبدأوا يمررون الكرة ويساعدون بعضهم البعض. مرر عمر الكرة لكريم، وسجل كريم هدفًا. هتف الجميع. لم يفوزوا بمفردهم - بل فازوا معًا. العمل الجماعي جعل اللعبة ممتعة وعادلة.



## Checkpoint

Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(fair – friends – first – team)

- ① Omar and his ..... played football at school.
- ② At ....., they all wanted to score.
- ③ The coach said, "Work as a ....."
- ④ Teamwork made the game fun and .....

## B Phonics Focus



Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

**g** /dʒ/ sound

"g" usually makes a soft sound /dʒ/ when it is followed by (e, i, or y)

ينطق صوت /dʒ/ عندما يكون متبوعًا بالحروف الآتية (e / i / y).



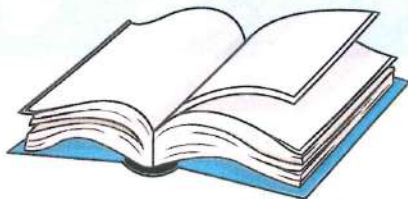
giraffe

زرافة



Egypt

مصر



page

صفحة



huge

ضخم



Checkpoint

Listen and write the missing sounds: استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

1



E – ypt

2



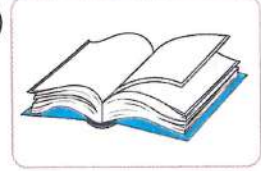
– iraffe

3



hu – e

4



pa – e





# Homework Time

ذاكر الكلمات حتى  
تتمكن من تسميعها في  
نهاية الوحدة  
في صفحة 181.

► Look and write:

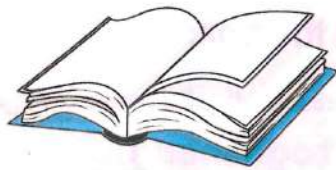
انظر واكتب:



giraffe



Egypt



page



huge



# Practice

on Lesson

3

1



Listen and write the missing sounds: SB

استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

1

\_ iraffe

2

E \_ ypt

3

pa \_ e

4

hu \_ e

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1

Everyone wants to ..... a goal.

a) play

b) cheer

c) score

2

Karim ..... the ball to Omar.

a) won

b) cheered

c) passed

3

The ..... said "Work as a team".

a) match

b) coach

c) ball

4

The book has twenty .....

a) giraffes

b) teams

c) pages

5

The ..... is a very tall animal.

a) page

b) giraffe

c) game

6

Teamwork makes games fun and .....

a) boring

b) fair

c) hard



3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(first – Teamwork – coach – together)

Adam and his friends played basketball. At <sup>(1)</sup> ....., everyone tried to score. Their <sup>(2)</sup> ..... said, "Pass the ball!" They worked <sup>(3)</sup> ....., shared the ball, and won the match. <sup>(4)</sup> ..... made the game fun and fair.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Lina plays football in the school team. Lina's team played an important match yesterday. They couldn't score because they didn't pass the ball. Their coach said, "Play as a team!". They started to pass the ball for each other. Finally, they scored two goals and won the match.



**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 Lina plays ..... in the school team.  
a) football                      b) basketball                      c) tennis
- 2 The team scored ..... goals and won the match.  
a) no                                  b) one                                  c) two

**B Answer the following questions:**

3 When did Lina play the match?

4 Why couldn't Lina's team score?

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

1 played – We – at – football – school.

2 they – At first, - all – to score – wanted.

3 helped – Karim – and – Omar – other – each.

4 made – Teamwork – the game – and – fun – fair. 

**6 Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:** ..... اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب. 

**“Teamwork at sports”**

(school – score – help)

## Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

community

مجتمع

near

بالقرب من

flowers

زهور

library

مكتبة

neighborhood

حي

street

شارع

toys

ألعاب

children

أطفال

proud (adj.)

فخور

## Definitions

plant يزرع

to put a flower or a tree in the ground

أن تضع زهرة أو شجرة في الأرض

donate يتبرع

to give things to help people

أن تعطى الأشياء لتساعد الناس

Ahmed and Mariam **donate** clothes to people.

يتبرع أحمد ومريم بالملابس للناس.

Laila **plants** a tree near her house.

تزرع ليلي شجرة قرب منزلها.



Sara

Hello, Omar. What are you doing?

مرحبًا يا عمر. ماذا تفعل؟

I am helping clean the park.

أنا أساعد في تنظيف الحديقة.



Sara

That is great! Can I help, too?

هذا رائع! هل يمكنني المساعدة أيضًا؟

Yes! Let's work together.

نعم! دعونا نعمل معًا.



Sara

We can plant flowers.

يمكننا زرع الزهور.

And we can donate books to the school library.

ويمكننا التبرع بكتب لمكتبة المدرسة.



Omar



Omar



Omar





## We Help Our Neighborhood!

نحن نساعد حيّنا!



Hady and Salma want to help their neighborhood. They work as a team. First, they clean the street. Then, they plant trees near the school. After that, they donate clothes and toys to children. Everyone is happy. Their teacher says, "Well done!" Teamwork makes the community better. Hady and Salma smile. They are proud to help.

يريد هادي وسلمى مساعدة حيّهما. إنهما يعملان معًا كفريق واحد. أولاً، ينظفان الشارع. ثم يزرعان أشجاراً قرب المدرسة. بعد ذلك، يتبرعان بملابس وألعاب للأطفال. الجميع سعداء. تقول معلمتهما: "أحسنتما!" العمل الجماعي يجعل المجتمع أفضل. يتسم هادي وسلمى. يشعران بالفخر لمساعدتهما.



### Checkpoint

### Read and complete:

اقرأ واكمل:

(proud – street – team – help)

- ① Hady and Salma want to ..... their neighborhood.
- ② They work as a .....
- ③ First, they clean the .....
- ④ They are ..... to help.



# Practice

on Lesson

4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 He plants ..... to help the community.  
a) streets                      b) flowers                      c) books
- 2 They worked hard to ..... the streets.  
a) clean                      b) plant                      c) help
- 3 Children like to play with .....  
a) toys                      b) clothes                      c) teamwork
- 4 We can donate ..... to the school library.  
a) streets                      b) trees                      c) books
- 5 We feel ..... when we help the community.  
a) sad                      b) proud                      c) tired
- 6 Adel and Ola help their .....  
a) team                      b) toy                      c) neighborhood



2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(help – neighbors – trees – streets)

These are Yara and Karim. They wanted to <sup>(1)</sup> ..... their neighborhood.  
First, they picked up trash from the <sup>(2)</sup> ..... Then, they planted  
<sup>(3)</sup> ..... in the park. Their <sup>(4)</sup> ..... thanked them for making the  
area cleaner.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Leila and Sami decided to help at the community center. They donated clothes first. Next, Leila prepared food boxes for families. Sami cleaned the streets and planted flowers near his house. Working together made the community better.





# Unit 5 Review

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى  
تمكين الطالب من  
مراجعة أهم الأجزاء  
التي وردت في الوحدة.

## Lesson ( 1 )

|        |                  |                 |             |             |              |
|--------|------------------|-----------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| clean  | ينظف             | tidy up the bed | يرتب السرير | share       | يشارك        |
| win    | يفوز             | cheer           | يهتف / يشجع | plant       | يزرع         |
| care   | يهتم / اهتمام    | donate          | يتبرع       | table       | منضدة        |
| chores | الأعمال المنزلية | match           | مباراة      | living room | غرفة المعيشة |

## Lesson ( 2 )

|         |        |        |          |          |         |
|---------|--------|--------|----------|----------|---------|
| plants  | نباتات | puddle | بركة ماء | piece of | قطعة من |
| wood    | خشب    | bridge | كوبرى    | tail     | ذيل     |
| project | مشروع  | ideas  | أفكار    | wag      | يهز     |

## Lesson ( 3 )

|       |            |      |            |       |             |
|-------|------------|------|------------|-------|-------------|
| coach | مدرب       | fun  | ممتع       | fair  | عادل / منصف |
| score | يحرز هدفًا | pass | يمرر الكرة | start | يبدأ        |

## Lesson ( 4 )

|              |       |         |      |         |       |
|--------------|-------|---------|------|---------|-------|
| community    | مجتمع | flowers | زهور | library | مكتبة |
| neighborhood | حي    | street  | شارع | proud   | فخور  |

## Phonics

**g** /g/

gum لبان

dog كلب

good جيد

green أخضر

big كبير

**g** /dʒ/

giraffe زرافة

Egypt مصر

page صفحة

huge ضخم

## Language

### Action verbs

أفعال الحركة

help يساعد

Salma **helps** Youssef with the project. تساعد سلمى يوسف في المشروع.

solve يحل

They **solve** the problem together. يحلان المشكلة معًا.

find يجد

Youssef **finds** a good idea. يجد يوسف فكرة جيدة.

work يعمل

They **work** as a team. يعملان كفريق واحد.

plan يخطط

They **plan** their project first. يخططان للمشروع أولاً.

fix يصلح

Salma **fixes** the poster. تصلح سلمى الملصق.

agree يتفق

They **agree** on what to do. يتفقان على ما يجب فعله.



# Unit 5 Dictation



تهدف هذه الجزئية إلى التأكد من إتقان الطالب لأهم المفردات اللغوية وفهمها باللغة العربية والإنجليزية.

Read and write:

اقرأ واكتب:

|            | الكلمة باللغة العربية | الكلمة باللغة الإنجليزية |               |
|------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|---------------|
| Lesson (1) | clean                 | .....                    | يفوز          |
|            | tidy up the bed       | .....                    | يهتف / يشجع   |
|            | share                 | .....                    | يزرع          |
|            | care                  | .....                    | يتبرع         |
|            | chores                | .....                    | العمل الجماعي |
| Lesson (2) | wood                  | .....                    | نباتات        |
|            | bridge                | .....                    | بركة ماء      |
|            | gum                   | .....                    | ذيل           |
|            | dog                   | .....                    | جيد           |
|            | green                 | .....                    | كبير          |
| Lesson (3) | project               | .....                    | أفكار         |
|            | coach                 | .....                    | ممتع          |
|            | page                  | .....                    | زرافة         |
|            | huge                  | .....                    | مصر           |
| Lesson (4) | score                 | .....                    | عادل / منصف   |
|            | neighborhood          | .....                    | مجتمع         |
|            | library               | .....                    | زهور          |
|            | toys                  | .....                    | شارع          |
|            | children              | .....                    | فخور          |

Write the missing letters, then put each word in a sentence:

اكتب الحروف الناقصة، ثم ضع كل كلمة في جملة:

1 c--ea--



.....

2 E---pt



.....



Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: \_\_\_\_\_

Tip 1:

بداية الجملة تبدأ بحرف كبير  
"Capital letter"

"Teamwork at home"  
(home – mother – clean)

Tip 2:

ضع (full stop) نقطة.  
الجملة دائماً تنتهي بنقطة.

Mona and Karim are at **home**. Their **mother** asks them to do some chores. First, they tidy up the living room. Then, they **clean** the table. How do you help at home?

Tip 3:

نستخدم comma بعد كلمات التسلسل.  
(Finally - Then - First)

Tip 4:

السؤال دائماً ينتهي بعلامة استفهام (Question).  
(mark)

"Teamwork at school"  
(project – agree – ideas)

Salma and Youssef had a **project** at school. At first, they couldn't **agree** on what to do. Then, they started to share **ideas**. Salma wrote, and Youssef drew.

"I help the community"  
(donate – plants – team)

I help the community. I **donate** clothes to people. I **plant** trees near my house. I work with my friends as a **team** to clean the neighborhood.

Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: \_\_\_\_\_

"Teamwork at sports"

(football – score – coach)

.....

.....

.....

.....





# Student's Book Corner

تدريبات إضافية مأخوذة من كتاب الوزارة. 📢

## 1 Rearrange the letters to make a word:

أعد الترتيب لتكون كلمة:

- A ① mgu ② gdo ③ ogod ④ gneer ⑤ gib

- B ① ffrage ② tpyEg ③ gepa ④ geuh

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① The students (answer – help) the questions together.
- ② Omar (helps – fixes) his friend with homework.
- ③ They (fix – plan) the broken chair in class.
- ④ We (plan – find) the trip before the school holiday.
- ⑤ Mariam (finds – agrees) a book in the library.

## 3 Rewrite each sentence with the correct capital letters and punctuation:

أعد كتابة الجمل مع ضبط الحروف الكبيرة وعلامات الترقيم:

- ① hady and salma want to help their neighborhood

- ② first they clean the street

- ③ they plant trees near the school

- ④ finally everyone is happy

- ⑤ they are proud to help



# Test yourself

30

## Listening

**1**   **Listen and write the missing sounds:** — استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة: 6

- 1** \_ um      **2** \_ iraffe      **3** E\_ ypt      **4** \_ ood

**2** **Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:** — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 2

- 1** To ..... is to give things to help people.  
a) plant      b) win      c) donate
- 2** I help mom finish the .....  
a) chores      b) community      c) teamwork
- 3** Can you help Hady ..... his toy?  
a) solve      b) find      c) agree
- 4** Nada can ..... hard math problems.  
a) help      b) plan      c) solve

## Reading

**3** **Read and complete the text with the words in the box:** 2

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

**(care – tired – agree – ideas)**

Amira and Nadia have a school project. They <sup>(1)</sup> ..... on what to do. They share <sup>(2)</sup> ..... and work as a team. When Amira feels <sup>(3)</sup> ....., Nadia helps her. They show <sup>(4)</sup> ..... and work together.

**4** **Read the text and answer the questions:** — اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 7

Lily, Amir, and Nour were in the playground. Colorful flowers were all around them. They saw a small puddle. They couldn't jump over it. Lily found some large bricks. Amir and Nour used the bricks to cross over the puddle. They were all happy by the end of the day.



**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 Colorful ..... were all around them.  
a) birds                      b) flowers                      c) bricks
- 2 ..... found some large bricks.  
a) Nour                      b) Amir                      c) Lily

**B Answer the following questions:**

- 3 Where were Lily, Amir, and Nour?  
.....
- 4 How did the children feel by the end of the day?  
.....

**Writing**

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً: 2

- 1 looks – Finally, – the – clean – classroom.  
.....

- 2 share – Karim – and – Mona – the – chores.  
.....

**6 Punctuate the following:** ..... ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

- 1 what are you doing  
.....
- 2 ahmed cheered for the football team  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding** 7

elements: ..... اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب. 

**"I help at home"**

**(First – then – proud)**

.....

.....

.....



1



Listen and number the pictures:

استمع ورقم الصور:

1

tidy up the bed

2

dog

3

Egypt

4

share

5

green



2

Read and fill in the gaps:

اقرأ واملاً الفراغات:

8

(score – cheered – ball – together)

The boys played football. Everyone wanted to <sup>(1)</sup> ..... goals. Their coach said, "Play <sup>(2)</sup> .....!" They passed the <sup>(3)</sup> ..... and helped each other. When Ali scored, the team <sup>(4)</sup> ..... Together they played well.

3

Unscramble and write:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات واكتب:

5

1



inw

2



umg

3



eacIn

4



affegir

5



pntla

4

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

8

- 1 To (donate – plant – pass) is to put flowers or trees in the ground.
- 2 Then, they planted (projects – toys – trees) near the school.
- 3 The (community – coach – teacher) tells us how to win the match.
- 4 Finally, they (started – planted – finished) the chores.
- 5 They (help – score – plan) for the project before they start.
- 6 My team (won – found – agreed) the match when we scored the goal.
- 7 We (find – fix – work) as a team to make a poster.
- 8 I can (fix – help – find) you do your homework.

5

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

1

you should tidy up the bed

2

who plants the trees in the garden



# Unit 6

# Dare to Dream

تشجع لتحلم

## Unit Outcomes

By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

### Listening

- identify vocabulary related to goal setting.
- recall events from the short stories.

- يتعرف على الكلمات المتعلقة بتحديد الأهداف.  
- يتذكر أحداثًا من القصص القصيرة.

### Speaking

- talk about goals, dreams, and how to achieve them.
- retell events from the short stories.
- pronounce correctly the three consonant clusters.

- يتحدث عن الأهداف والأحلام وكيفية تحقيقها.  
- يعيد سرد أحداث من القصص القصيرة.  
- ينطق مجموعات الحروف الساكنة الثلاثة بشكل صحيح.

### Reading

- read short stories that include goal setting expressions.
- recognize sentences in the present continuous tense, and words with three consonant clusters.

- يقرأ قصصًا قصيرة تتضمن تعابير عن تحديد الأهداف.

- يتعرف على جمل في زمن المضارع المستمر، وكلمات تحتوي على ثلاث مجموعات من الحروف الساكنة.

### Writing

- write simple sentences about goals and success.
- write simple sentences using the present continuous tense and correct punctuation.

- يكتب جملًا بسيطة عن الأهداف والنجاح.

- يكتب جملًا بسيطة باستخدام زمن المضارع المستمر وعلامات الترقيم الصحيحة.



## A Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say: \_\_\_\_\_ استمع، أشر وقل:



goal  
هدف



try  
يحاول



step  
خطوة



practice  
يتدرب/يمارس



celebrate  
يحتفل



success  
النجاح



reach  
يصل

## Extra Vocabulary

plan  
mud

يخطط / خطة  
طين

get better  
proud

يتحسن  
فخور

every day  
friends

كل يوم  
أصدقاء

## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

## Present

try  
kick

يحاول  
يشوط/يركل

## Past

tried  
kicked

## Present

train  
splash

يتدرب  
يرتطم (يطرطش)

## Past

trained  
splashed



## Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer: \_\_\_\_\_ اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① I practice well to reach my (goal – plan).
- ② Egyptians (practice – celebrate) Sham El-Nessim.
- ③ I have a good (plan – success) to finish the homework on time.
- ④ Our school team (reach – practice) every Friday.



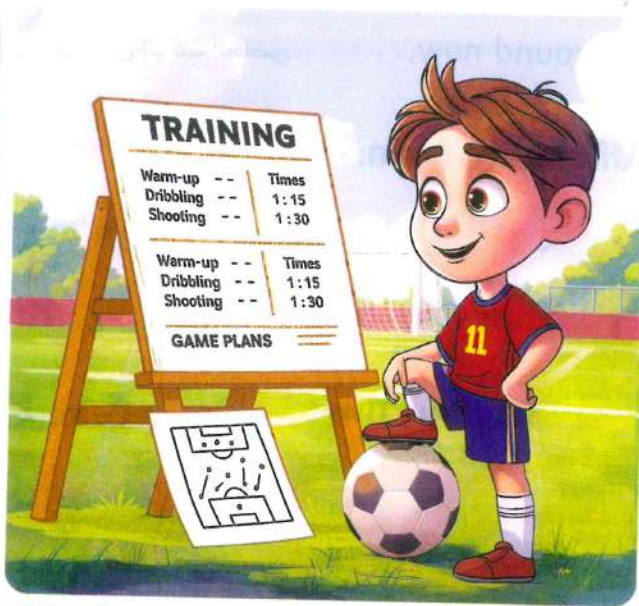
Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up Do you have a goal?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه



Samer's Goal

Samer is trying to get better at football. He is training every day. He is kicking the ball and splashing in the mud. Now, he is playing a match with his friends. He is scoring a goal and is feeling very proud.

يحاول سامر أن يصبح أفضل (يتحسن) في كرة القدم. إنه يتدرب كل يوم. إنه يركل الكرة ويرتطم بالطين. الآن، هو يلعب مباراة مع أصدقائه. إنه يسجل هدفاً ويشعر بالفخر الشديد.



Checkpoint Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(match – proud – kicking – trying)

- 1 Samer is ..... to get better at football.
- 2 He is playing a ..... with his friends.
- 3 He is ..... the ball and splashing in the mud.
- 4 He is feeling very .....

## B Language in Use

### The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

#### Usage الاستخدام

- We use the present continuous tense to talk about actions happening now or around now. يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للحديث عن الأفعال التي تحدث الآن أو في الوقت الحاضر.

• صيغة الإثبات:

#### Affirmative Form:

|                             |   |           |                            |
|-----------------------------|---|-----------|----------------------------|
| I                           | → | am = 'm   | + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing. |
| He - She - It<br>فاعل مفرد  | → | is = 's   |                            |
| We - You - They<br>فاعل جمع | → | are = 're |                            |



I **am trying** to be a better student.

أنا أحاول أن أكون طالبًا أفضل.

Samer **is scoring** a goal.

سامر يسجل هدفًا.



The boys **are celebrating**.

الأولاد يحتفلون.



#### Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Nour (**is** – am – are) singing a song.
- I am (do – **doing** – does) my homework.
- (He – They – You) **is** drawing a picture.
- You (am – is – **are**) listening to music.
- We are (plays – played – **playing**) sports.
- I like (eat – eating – **eat**) chocolate cakes.

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للقواعد.





# Homework Time

ذاكر الكلمات حتى  
تتمكن من تسميعها في  
نهاية الوحدة  
في صفحة 208.

Look and write:

انظر واكتب:



goal



try



step



practice



celebrate



success



reach



# Practice

on Lesson

1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We are ..... our mother's birthday now.  
a) sleeping                      b) celebrating                      c) scoring
- 2 The cat is ..... under the bed.  
a) slept                      b) sleep                      c) sleeping
- 3 Youssef is ..... to get better in English.  
a) trying                      b) tries                      c) try
- 4 He felt proud of his .....  
a) shoes                      b) success                      c) bag
- 5 We need to ..... more to win.  
a) practice                      b) cry                      c) reach
- 6 Children ..... reading books at the library.  
a) am                      b) is                      c) are
- 7 We must ..... the station on time. **Super Question ?**  
a) paint                      b) reach                      c) shout

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(proud - goal - train - team)

Anas wants to be a great football player. Every afternoon, he goes to the club to <sup>(1)</sup>..... He runs, kicks the ball, and practices with his <sup>(2)</sup>..... One day, he scored a great <sup>(3)</sup>..... in an important match. His coach and family were very <sup>(4)</sup>..... of him.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Youssef is a young boy who enjoys playing football. His coach always tells him that practice makes perfect. Last Friday, Youssef played a match with his team. He scored a goal. Youssef smiled and said he would never stop trying to be better.



**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 Youssef enjoys .....  
a) swimming                      b) playing football                      c) drawing
- 2 ..... makes perfect.  
a) Jumping                      b) Eating                      c) Practice

**B Answer the following questions:**

- 3 When did Youssef play the match? .....
- 4 What did Youssef do in the match? .....

**4 Reorder to make sentences:** ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- 1 Amir – football – practices. ....
- 2 Nour – to be – tries – swimmer – a great . ....
- 3 every day – training – Anas – is. ....
- 4 is – the – Karim – kicking – ball. ....

**5 Punctuate the following:** ..... ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 samer is training every day .....
- 2 practice makes perfect .....

**6 Write a paragraph Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب.

“Your dream”

(football – practice – goal)

## Vocabulary

## Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

|            |            |         |         |         |           |
|------------|------------|---------|---------|---------|-----------|
| spring     | فصل الربيع | outside | بالخارج | splash  | طرطشه/ضجة |
| fast (adj) | سريع       | rock    | صخرة    | cartoon | كارتون    |
| screen     | شاشة       |         |         |         |           |

## Verbs

|        |           |       |          |       |            |
|--------|-----------|-------|----------|-------|------------|
| spray  | يرش       | laugh | يضحك     | bump  | تصطدم      |
| bounce | ترجع/ترتد | spin  | يلف/يدور | spilt | تنكسر/تنكس |



## Warm up

Do you like spring?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

## A Day to Remember

It is spring, and Laila is playing outside. She is spraying water and laughing as it makes a big splash. She runs in the garden, playing with her toy car. The car spins fast and bumps into a rock, but it doesn't split—just bounces back! Laila smiles, sits down, and watches a funny cartoon on the screen.



إنه الربيع، وليلى تلعب في الخارج. إنها ترش الماء وتضحك؛ لأنه يحدث ضجة كبيرة. إنها تركض في الحديقة وتلعب بسيارتها اللعبة. تدور السيارة بسرعة وتصطدم بصخرة، لكنها لا تنكسر، بل ترتد مرة أخرى! تبسم ليلي وتجلس وتشاهد رسمًا كرتونيًا مضحكًا على الشاشة.



## Checkpoint

Read and complete:

اقرأ واكمل:

(cartoon – bumps – toy – playing)

- 1 Laila is ..... outside.
- 2 Laila is playing with her ..... car.
- 3 The car spins fast and ..... into a rock.
- 4 She watches a funny ..... on the screen.



## Reading and Writing

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

### Vocabulary

|      |       |      |       |        |             |
|------|-------|------|-------|--------|-------------|
| bike | دراجة | feet | أقدام | pedals | دواسات/بدال |
| path | ممر   |      |       |        |             |

### Verbs

|       |       |      |           |       |      |
|-------|-------|------|-----------|-------|------|
| learn | يتعلم | hold | يمسك      | push  | يدفع |
| ride  | يركب  | show | يوضح/يبين | bring | يحضر |



### Warm up Do you like riding bikes?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه

Mona is learning how to ride her red bike. She is practicing every day in the garden after school. First, she is holding the bike and walking with it. Then, she is pushing her feet on the pedals. Now, she is riding around the garden path. She is feeling proud. Mona is showing that practice brings success.



تتعلم منى كيفية ركوب دراجتها الحمراء. إنها تتدرب كل يوم في الحديقة بعد المدرسة. أولاً، هي تمسك الدراجة وتمشي بها. ثم تقوم بدفع قدميها على الدواسات. الآن، هي تركب حول الحديقة. إنها تشعر بالفخر. منى تظهر أن التدريب يجلب النجاح.



### Checkpoint

Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(cartoons – pedals – success – ride)

- 1 Mona is learning how to ..... her bike.
- 2 To ride a bike, push your feet on the .....
- 3 Children like watching ..... movies.
- 4 Practice brings .....

## B Phonics Focus

### Three-Consonant Clusters



Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

spr



spring  
فصل الربيع

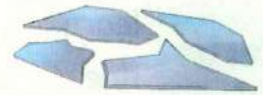


spray  
يرش

spl



splash  
طرطشة



split  
تتحطم/تتكسر

scr



screen  
شاشة



scratch  
يخريش

str



string  
خيطة



street  
شارع



Checkpoint



Listen and write the missing sounds: استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

1



\_\_\_ay

2



\_\_\_ash

3



\_\_\_atch

4



\_\_\_ing





# Homework Time

ذاكر الكلمات حتى  
تتمكن من تسميعها في  
نهاية الوحدة  
في صفحة 208.



Look and write:

انظر واكتب:



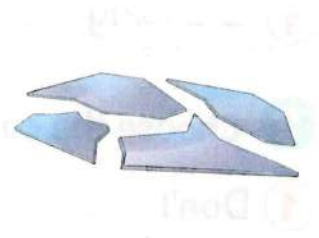
spring



spray



splash



split



screen



scratch



string



street



# Practice

on Lesson **2**

**1**



Listen and write the missing sounds: ——— استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة: ———

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب. 📌

**1**

— — —ing

**2**

— — —it

**3**

— — —eet

**4**

— — —een

**2**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: ——— اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: ———

**1**

Don't ..... water on the floor.

a) spray

b) eat

c) fix

**2**

The trees are green in .....

a) spring

b) fall

c) storm

**3**

The kite has a long .....

a) hat

b) string

c) bell

**4**

Mona is showing that ..... brings success.

a) path

b) pedal

c) practice

**5**

The boy is spraying water and it makes a big .....

a) spring

b) splash

c) scratch

**6**

I saw the game on the .....

a) screen

b) string

c) bag

**7**

The ..... has many plants.

a) car

b) garden

c) rock

**8**

Children are playing in the .....

a) kitchen

b) park

c) feet

**3**

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

**(splash – smiles – garden – inside)**

It is a sunny spring day. Omar is in the <sup>(1)</sup>..... playing with his ball. He kicks it hard, and it lands in a puddle with a big <sup>(2)</sup>.....! He laughs because his shirt is wet. After playing, Omar goes <sup>(3)</sup>..... and watches a funny show on the screen. He sits with his snack and <sup>(4)</sup>..... happy.



**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** ..... اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Omar is learning how to swim. He is practicing every day at the pool. He is holding the side and kicking his legs. I can see him moving his arms in the water. Now, he is swimming across the pool. He is feeling happy. Omar is showing that practice makes you better.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 Omar is practicing .....  
a) every day                      b) today                      c) yesterday
- 2 Omar is swimming across the .....  
a) hall                      b) sea                      c) pool

**B Answer the following questions:**

- 3 What is Omar learning to do? .....
- 4 How does Omar feel now? .....

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- 1 are – cartoon – watching – a funny – We. .....
- 2 spraying – Ramy – water – is – and laughing. ....
- 3 proud – is – She – feeling. ....
- 4 practicing – every day – is – Mona. ....
- 5 is – feet – Adel – his – pushing. ....

**6 Punctuate the following:** ..... ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 mona runs in the garden .....
- 2 where is the pool .....

**7 Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:** ..... اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاوب عنه آخر الكتاب.

“Riding a bike”

(learn – practice – garden)

## Reading and Writing



Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:

## Vocabulary

|           |                 |       |                   |           |              |
|-----------|-----------------|-------|-------------------|-----------|--------------|
| math      | رياضيات         | exam  | اختبار            | nervous   | عصبى/متوتر   |
| question  | سؤال            | later | لاحقًا / فيما بعد | teacher   | معلم / معلمة |
| full mark | الدرجة النهائية | great | عظيم              | well done | أحسن         |

## Verbs

study

يذاكر

answer

يجيب

get

يحصل على



## Warm up

Do you feel nervous before exams?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه



Tamer studied hard every day for his math exam. On the exam day, he felt nervous. Then, he answered all the questions. Later, the teacher told him that he got full marks. Tamer felt very proud and happy. He celebrated with his family at home. They clapped, smiled, and said, "Well done!" It was a great day.



كان تامر يذاكر بجد كل يوم لامتحان الرياضيات. في يوم الامتحان، شعر تامر بالتوتر. ثم أجاب على جميع الأسئلة. بعد ذلك أخبره المعلم أنه حصل على الدرجة النهائية. شعر تامر بالفخر الشديد والسعادة، واحتفل مع عائلته في المنزل. صفقوا وابتسموا وقالوا: "أحسن!" لقد كان يومًا عظيمًا.



## Checkpoint

Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(nervous – family – hard – answered)

- 1 Tamer studied ..... every day.
- 2 On the exam day, Tamer felt .....
- 3 He ..... all the questions.
- 4 He celebrated with his .....





# Practice

on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Tamer ..... hard every day for his exam.  
a) studied                      b) got                      c) felt
- 2 On the exam day, I always feel .....  
a) sleepy                      b) hungry                      c) nervous
- 3 I got the full mark. I answered ..... the questions.  
a) some                      b) all                      c) any
- 4 Tamer felt very ..... and happy.  
a) tired                      b) proud                      c) bored
- 5 Anas ..... with his friends.  
a) celebrated                      b) told                      c) said
- 6 It was a ..... day. I got full marks on all my exams.  
a) boring                      b) great                      c) long
- 7 After hearing his great results, Tamer felt .....  
a) proud                      b) sad                      c) scared
- 8 I have an English ..... today.  
a) home                      b) mark                      c) exam

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة :

(great – proud – nervous – marks)

Moaz practiced reading every day for the school competition. On the competition day, he was a little <sup>(1)</sup> ..... After that, the teacher said, he got full <sup>(2)</sup> ..... Omar's parents were <sup>(3)</sup> ..... of him! It was a <sup>(4)</sup> ..... day.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Mona wanted to learn how to swim. She went to the pool every weekend. At first, she was scared, but she didn't give up. Her coach helped her a lot. After some weeks, Mona swam across the pool by herself. Her parents were very proud. They took pictures and cheered for her. It was a wonderful moment.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 Mona went to the pool every .....  
a) year                                      b) weekend                                      c) day
- 2 The coach ..... her a lot.  
a) felt                                      b) studied                                      c) helped

**B Answer the following questions:**

- 3 When did Mona go to the pool? .....
- 4 How did Mona feel after swimming by herself? .....

**4 Reorder to make sentences:** ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- 1 hard – Tamer – every day – studied. ....
- 2 with – I – family – my – celebrated. ....
- 3 happy – felt – proud – and – He. ....
- 4 questions – all – Anas – the – answered. ....
- 5 smiled – They – and – clapped. ....

**5 Punctuate the following:** ..... ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 what did Tamer study for .....
- 2 tamer felt very proud .....
- 3 it was a great day .....

**6 Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:** ..... اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاوب عنه آخر الكتاب.

**“A great day”**

(full marks – proud – celebrate)

.....

.....

.....





Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:

## Vocabulary

|              |              |          |            |
|--------------|--------------|----------|------------|
| runner       | عداء         | fast     | سريع       |
| school field | فناء المدرسة | one day  | ذات يوم    |
| race         | سباق         | together | معًا/سويًا |
| both         | كل من        | cheers   | هتافات     |

## Verbs

need

يحتاج

get ready for

يستعد لـ



## Warm up

Do you practice running?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه

Yara is a fast runner. She practices every day at the school field. One day, her friend needed help getting ready for a race. Yara showed her how to run and practice. They ran together every day. On race day, her friend ran well and smiled. Yara felt happy. They both celebrated their success with big cheers.



يارا عداءة سريعة. تتدرب كل يوم في فناء/ساحة المدرسة. في أحد الأيام، احتاجت صديقتها إلى المساعدة في الاستعداد للسباق. وضحت لها يارا كيفية الجري والتدرب. لقد ركضوا معًا كل يوم. في يوم السباق، ركضت صديقتها بشكل جيد وابتسمت. شعرت يارا بالسعادة. كلاهما احتفل بنجاحه مع هتافات كبيرة.



## Checkpoint

Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(field – needed – cheers – runner)

- 1 Yara is a fast .....
- 2 She practices at the school .....
- 3 Her friend ..... her help.
- 4 They celebrated their success with big .....



**1** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 2** Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(showed – race – practices – together)

**3** Read the text and answer the questions: ..... اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

204 Unit Six



**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 Laila loves.....  
a) running                      b) drawing                      c) painting
- 2 Laila feels .....  
a) happy                      b) sad                      c) nervous

**B Answer the following questions:**

- 3 When did they paint together? .....
- 4 Who did Laila teach to paint? .....

**4 Reorder to make sentences:** ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- 1 together – every – ran – They – day. ....
- 2 is – Yara – runner – a – fast. ....
- 3 day, – well – On race – ran – she. ....
- 4 success – their – They – celebrated. ....
- 5 help – needed – friend – Her. ....

**5 Punctuate the following:** ..... ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 yara is a fast runner .....
- 2 she felt happy and celebrated .....
- 3 her friend smiled on race day .....

**6 Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:** ..... اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاوب عنه آخر الكتاب. 📌

**“Helping friends”**

(Saturday – swimming – happy)

.....

.....

.....

# Unit 6 Review

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى  
تمكين الطالب من  
مراجعة أهم الأجزاء  
التي وردت في الوحدة.

## Lesson (1)

|           |       |          |       |            |        |
|-----------|-------|----------|-------|------------|--------|
| goal      | هدف   | try      | يحاول | step       | خطوة   |
| plan      | يخطط  | practice | يتدرب | get better | يتحسن  |
| celebrate | يحتفل | proud    | فخور  | success    | النجاح |
| mud       | طين   | reach    | يصل   | friends    | أصدقاء |

## Lesson (2)

|        |            |         |         |         |           |
|--------|------------|---------|---------|---------|-----------|
| spring | فصل الربيع | outside | بالخارج | splash  | طرطشه/ضجة |
| fast   | سريع       | rock    | صخرة    | cartoon | كارتون    |
| screen | شاشة       |         |         |         |           |

## Lesson (3)

|           |                 |       |                 |           |            |
|-----------|-----------------|-------|-----------------|-----------|------------|
| math      | رياضيات         | exam  | اختبار          | nervous   | عصبى/متوتر |
| question  | سؤال            | later | لاحقاً/فيما بعد | teacher   | معلم/معلمة |
| full mark | الدرجة النهائية | great | عظيم            | well done | أحسن       |

## Lesson (4)

|              |              |          |              |
|--------------|--------------|----------|--------------|
| runner       | عداء         | fast     | سريع         |
| school field | فناء المدرسة | one day  | يوم واحد     |
| race         | سباق         | together | معاً / سوياً |
| both         | كل من        | cheers   | هتافات       |

## Phonics

spr



spring  
فصل الربيع

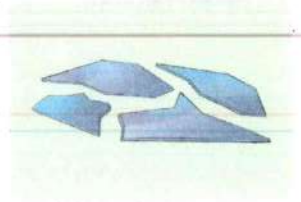


spray  
يرش

spl



splash  
طرطشة



split  
تتحطم/تتكسر



scr

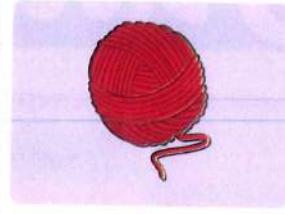


screen  
شاشة



scratch  
يخريش

str



string  
خيوط



street  
شارع

## Language in Use

### The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

#### Usage الاستخدام

- We use the present continuous tense to talk about actions happening now or around now.
- يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للحديث عن الأفعال التي تحدث الآن أو في الوقت الحاضر.

#### Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

|                             |   |           |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---|-----------|---------------------------------|
| I                           | → | am = 'm   | + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing ..... |
| He - She - It<br>فاعل مفرد  | → | is = 's   |                                 |
| We - You - They<br>فاعل جمع | → | are = 're |                                 |



I **am trying** to be a better student.

أنا أحاول أن أكون طالبًا أفضل.

Samer **is scoring** a goal.

سامر يسجل هدفًا.



The boys **are celebrating**.

الأولاد يحتفلون.

# Unit 6 Dictation



تهدف هذه الجزئية إلى التأكد من إتقان الطالب لأهم المفردات اللغوية وفهمها باللغة العربية والإنجليزية.

اقرأ واكتب: Read and write:

|            | الكلمة باللغة الإنجليزية | الكلمة باللغة العربية |              |
|------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| Lesson (1) | goal                     | .....                 | يخطط/خطة     |
|            | step                     | .....                 | يحاول        |
|            | practice                 | .....                 | النجاح       |
|            | celebrate                | .....                 | كرة قدم      |
|            | reach                    | .....                 | كل يوم       |
| Lesson (2) | toy car                  | .....                 | فصل الربيع   |
|            | splash                   | .....                 | حديقة منزل   |
|            | spray                    | .....                 | صخرة         |
|            | split                    | .....                 | شاشة         |
|            | cartoon                  | .....                 | دواسات/ بدال |
| Lesson (3) | math                     | .....                 | عظيم         |
|            | question                 | .....                 | عصبي/متوتر   |
|            | full mark                | .....                 | أحسن         |
|            | exam                     | .....                 | معلم/معلمة   |
| Lesson (4) | one day                  | .....                 | فناء المدرسة |
|            | together                 | .....                 | سباق         |
|            | cheers                   | .....                 | سريع         |

Write the missing letters, then put each word in a sentence:

اكتب الحروف الناقصة، ثم ضع كل كلمة في جملة:

① \_ \_reen



② s-r-ng



لتسميع كلمات أكثر خاصة بهذه الوحدة .. اذهب إلى كراسة التسميع آخر الكتاب.





تتضمن هذه الصفحة  
تجميعاً لأهم  
موضوعات الوحدة.

Golden tips for correct writing: نصائح ذهبية للكتابة الصحيحة:



► Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

Tip1:

ابدأ الجملة وأسماء الأشخاص وأيام الأسبوع  
بحرف كبير "Capital letter".

"A day you never forget"  
(Friday – park – bike)

Tip2:

ضع period (full stop)  
في نهاية الجملة.

My name is Salma. Last Friday was great. I got up at six in the morning. I went to the park with my family. My sister learned me how to ride a bike.

Tip3:

اكتب بخط مرتب وتأكد من كتابتك  
لل كلمات بشكل صحيح correct spelling.

Tip4:

استخدم الكلمات المساعدة في كتابة جمل  
صحيحة.

"A nice weekend"

(zoo – pictures – happy)

My name is Salma. Yesterday, I visited the zoo. We took many pictures there.  
I was very happy. It was a great day.

"Helping your friend"

(swimmer – help – race)

My name is Habiba. I'm a good swimmer. Yesterday, I helped my friend  
Sara get ready for the next race. She was very happy.

► Write a paragraph of Three sentence (15) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

"A prize you won"

(studied – full marks – proud)



# Student's Book Corner

**1 Read and number:** ..... اقرأ ورقم :

- ☐ Samer practices football.
- ☐ Laila has a plan for the future.
- ☐ Karim has a goal to be a doctor.
- ☐ Mariam celebrates passing the exam.
- ☐ You should take a step to be a better student.
- ☐ Nour tries hard to be a great swimmer.

1



2



3



4



5



6



7



8



**2 Rearrange the letters to make a word:** ..... أعد ترتيب الحروف لتكون كلمة :

1 gsnirp .....

3 hsalps .....

2 srteet .....

4 erscen .....

**3 Rewrite each sentence with the correct punctuation and capital letters:**

أعد كتابة كل جملة مستخدمًا علامات الترقيم والحروف الكبيرة الصحيحة:

1 she is spraying water everywhere .....

2 the car spins fast .....

**4 Put the sentences in the correct order:** ..... ضع الجمل في ترتيبها الصحيح :

- ☐ She is pushing her feet on the pedals.
- ☐ Mona is riding around the garden path.
- ☐ Mona is learning how to ride her red bike.
- ☐ She is practicing every day in the garden after school.
- ☐ She is holding the bike and walking with it.
- ☐ She is feeling proud.





# Test yourself

30

## Listening



1 Listen and write the missing sounds: استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1 \_\_\_\_eet

2 \_\_\_\_ing

3 \_\_\_\_een

4 \_\_\_\_ay

## Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

1 My sister ..... swimming at the club.

a) scores

b) reaches

c) practices

2 My parents ..... watching T.V.

a) am

b) are

c) is

3 I hope you ..... better soon.

a) get

b) take

c) show

4 Salma is ..... hard to win.

a) train

b) trains

c) training

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(sandwiches – park – pictures – nice)

Last Friday, I went to the <sup>(1)</sup> ..... with my family. The weather was <sup>(2)</sup> ..... and sunny. We sat on the grass and ate <sup>(3)</sup> ..... for lunch. Then, I played with my brother and took many <sup>(4)</sup> ..... It was a fun day!

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

Ali loved playing football. Every day, he practiced in the street with his friends. His dream was to play in a big match. One day, his team reached the final game. Ali played very well and scored the winning goal. Everyone cheered for him. He was very happy.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 Ali's team reached the ..... game.  
a) training                      b) first                      c) final
- 2 Ali scored the winning .....  
a) match                      b) goal                      c) great

**B Answer the following questions:**

- 3 Where did Ali practice football? .....
- 4 How did Ali feel after the match? .....

**Writing**

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

2

- 1 is – the – Samer – ball – kicking. ....
- 2 car – fast – The – spins. ....

**6 Punctuate the following:** ..... ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

- 1 they like math .....
- 2 who studied English .....

**7 Write a paragraph of Three sentence (15) words using the following guiding elements:** ..... اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

7

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب.

**"Your goal"**

(better – train – proud)

.....

.....

.....





1



Listen and number the pictures: \_\_\_\_\_

استمع ورقم الصور:

1 goal

2 step

3 practice

4 celebrate

5 reach



2

Read and fill in the gaps: \_\_\_\_\_

اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

8

(proud - goals - football - get)

Anas dreams to be a <sup>(1)</sup>..... player. He practices every day to <sup>(2)</sup>..... better.  
He likes scoring <sup>(3)</sup>..... . His family are feeling <sup>(4)</sup>..... .

3

Unscramble and write: \_\_\_\_\_

أعد ترتيب الكلمات واكتب:

5

1



rtngis

2



teestr

3



shspla

4



ingsrp

5



eescnr

4

Choose the correct answer: \_\_\_\_\_

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

8

- 1 We live in 21 Nahda (screen - spray - street).
- 2 Yesterday, I answered an (mark - exam - lunch).
- 3 My family (celebrate - reach - try) Sham El-Nessim Day.
- 4 We play football at the school (classroom - bathroom - field).
- 5 I ran fast and won the (race - success - cheers).
- 6 My friends are (gets - get - getting) ready for the exams.
- 7 Amira is (read - reads - reading) her favorite book.
- 8 My parents (is - are - am) sleeping in their room.

5

Punctuate the following: \_\_\_\_\_

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

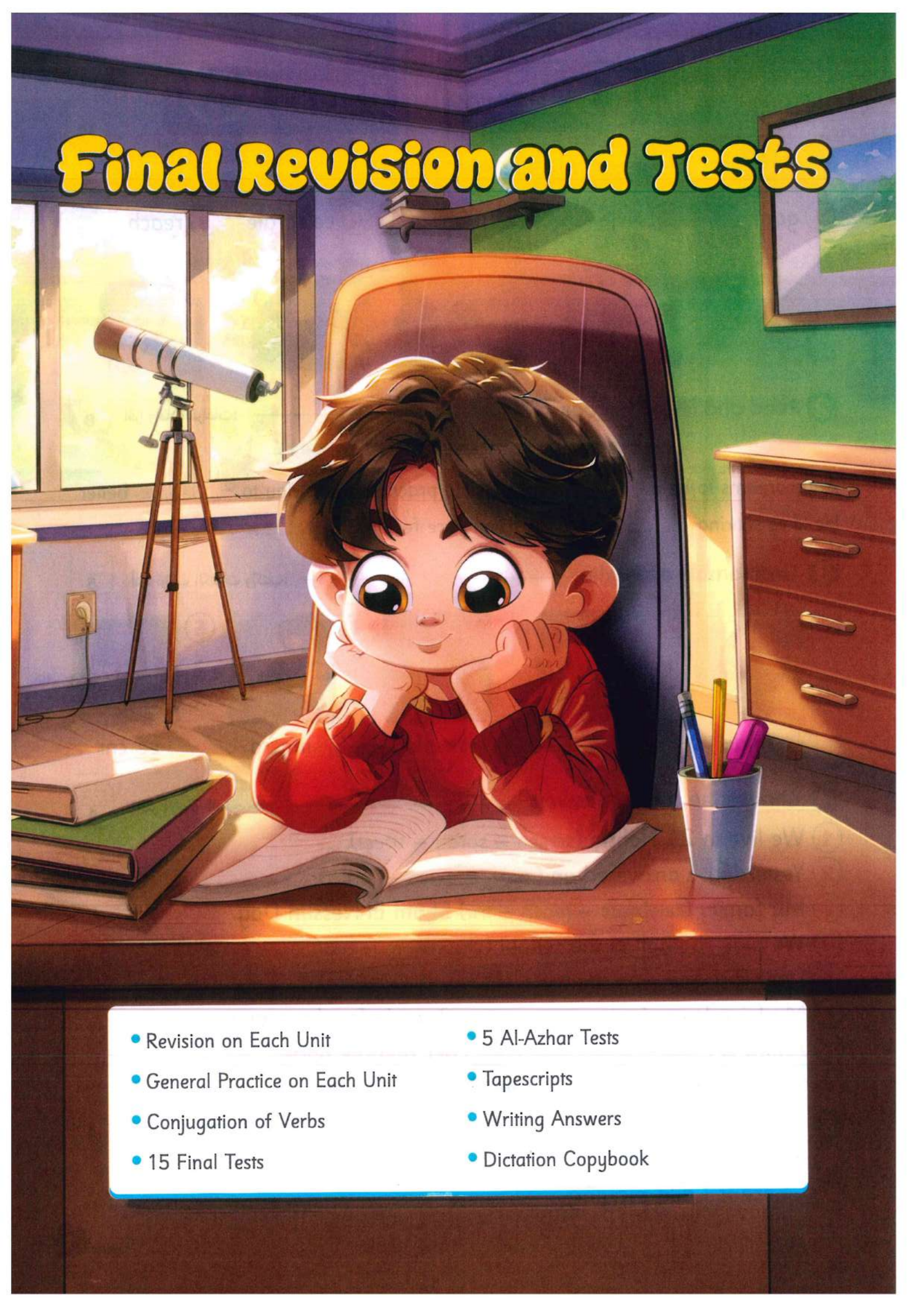
4

1 the car spins fast

2 where is Laila playing



# Final Revision and Tests

- 
- A cartoon illustration of a young boy with dark, wavy hair and large, expressive eyes, wearing a red long-sleeved shirt. He is sitting at a wooden desk, resting his chin on his hands while looking at an open book. To his left is a stack of three books (white, green, and brown). To his right is a blue cup holding several pens and pencils. In the background, a telescope on a tripod stands near a window with a view of greenery. A wooden chest of drawers is visible on the right, and a framed picture hangs on the green wall. The room is lit with warm, golden light, suggesting late afternoon or early morning.
- Revision on Each Unit
  - General Practice on Each Unit
  - Conjugation of Verbs
  - 15 Final Tests
  - 5 Al-Azhar Tests
  - Tapescripts
  - Writing Answers
  - Dictation Copybook



# Revision on Unit 1

## Vocabulary

|                   |                       |                            |                              |
|-------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| Hello!            | أهلاً!                | Good morning!              | صباح الخير!                  |
| Goodbye!          | إلى اللقاء!           | How ...?                   | كيف ...؟                     |
| name              | اسم                   | How old ...?               | كم العمر ...؟                |
| Egypt             | مصر                   | Sit down.                  | اجلس.                        |
| Listen carefully. | استمع جيداً.          | May I go to the bathroom?  | هل يمكنني الذهاب إلى الحمام؟ |
| Don't shout.      | لا تصرخ.              | short hair                 | شعر قصير                     |
| classmates        | زملاء الفصل           | shy                        | خجول                         |
| tall              | طويل                  | friends                    | أصدقاء                       |
| long hair         | شعر طويل              | jokes                      | طرائف (نكت)                  |
| funny             | مضحك                  | need                       | يحتاج                        |
| polite            | مؤدب                  | make my bed                | أرتب سريري                   |
| top shelf         | الرف العلوي           | do my homework             | أؤدي الواجب المنزلي          |
| get dressed       | يرتدي                 | See you later!             | أراك لاحقاً!                 |
| go to school      | يذهب إلى المدرسة      | Thank you.                 | شكراً لك                     |
| Nice to meet you. | سعيد بلقائك.          | nice                       | رائع                         |
| fine              | بخير                  | Raise your hand.           | ارفع يدك.                    |
| Primary 3         | الصف الثالث الابتدائي | Keep your classroom clean. | حافظ على نظافة فصلك.         |
| Be kind.          | كن عطوفاً             | loudly                     | صوت عال                      |
| rule              | قاعدة                 | straight hair              | شعر ناعم                     |
| curly hair        | شعر متموج             | kind                       | عطوف                         |
| brown hair        | شعر بني               | helpful                    | مساعد                        |
| friendly          | ودود                  | brush my teeth             | أغسل أسناني                  |
| Egyptian          | مصري                  | have breakfast             | يتناول الإفطار               |
| brush my hair     | أمشط شعري             |                            |                              |

## Phonics Focus

“wh” /w/

|       |          |       |      |       |      |
|-------|----------|-------|------|-------|------|
| what  | ما/ ماذا | when  | متى  | where | أين  |
| whale | حوت      | wheel | إطار | white | أبيض |

## Verb "to be" in the present simple

| Subject                | Verb to be | Examples                 |
|------------------------|------------|--------------------------|
| I                      | am         | I <b>am</b> excited.     |
| He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد  | is         | She <b>is</b> kind.      |
| You/ We/ They/ اسم جمع | are        | They <b>are</b> at home. |

### • Present Simple Tense for Routines:

**Usage:** We use the present simple to talk about routines and things we do every day.

#### Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I/ We/ You/ They + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر

He/ She/ It + (s/es/ies) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. - I **play** football.

- We **play** a game together.
- You **play** with your friends.
- They **play** after school.

e.g. - He **plays** in the park.

- She **plays** the piano.
- It **plays** in the garden.

s

Add "**-s**" to the verb when using He/ She/ It.

es

If the verb **ends** in ch, sh, x, ss, or o, add "**-es**" with He/ She/ It.

ies

If a verb **ends** in a consonant + y, change the **y** to **i** and add "**-es**" with He/ She/ It.

s

If the verb **ends** in a vowel + y, add "**-s**" with He/ She/ It.



## General Practice on Unit (1)

## Listening



 **Listen and write the missing sounds:** ————— استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

- ① \_\_en                      ② \_\_ale                      ③ \_\_eel
- ④ \_\_ite                      ⑤ \_\_ere                      ⑥ \_\_at

## Reading

**2** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: \_\_\_\_\_ اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- [illegible]

**3** Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

**A**

(sit - kind - listen - shout)

Today, the teacher said, "Be (1)..... to everyone. Then she told us to (2)..... down and don't (3)..... . We had to (4)..... carefully to the instructions.

## B (meet – goodbye – good morning – thank you)

Every morning, I say “(1).....” to my family and friends. When I meet someone new, I say “Nice to (2)..... you.” After school, I say “(3).....” to my teachers for helping me. When I leave, I say “(4).....” and “See you later.” These polite words make everyone happy!

4 Read the text and answer the questions: \_\_\_\_\_ اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I wake up early in the morning. I brush my teeth and eat breakfast. Then, I go to school and study my lessons. After school, I play and do my homework. Finally, I sleep.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 I wake up early in the .....  
a) morning                      b) night                      c) afternoon
- 2 After school, I ..... and do my homework.  
a) eat breakfast                      b) play                      c) sleep

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do you do after you wake up?  
.....
- 4 What do you do before you sleep?  
.....

## Writing

5 Reorder to make sentences: \_\_\_\_\_ أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

A 1 laugh – make – I – friends – my.  
.....

2 much – doesn't – to – like – He – talk.  
.....

3 Nada – to – Nice – you, – meet!  
.....

4 you – me – Thank – for – helping.  
.....



B ① school – to – They – go – every day.

② like – pizza – he – Does?

③ She – to – pictures – draw – likes.

④ you – Where – do – live?

6 Punctuate the following: \_\_\_\_\_ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

A ① this is my new friend laila.

② what color is Mona's hair

③ how are you, adam?

④ it is a sunny day today

B ① do you want some ice cream

② my sister likes to play football

③ my best friend's name is sarah.

④ thank you for your help

## Revision on Unit 2

### Vocabulary

|                |                  |                |               |                            |                      |
|----------------|------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------------------|----------------------|
| father         | أب               | mother         | أم            | sister                     | أخت                  |
| grandmother    | جدة              | grandfather    | جد            | uncle                      | عم/خال               |
| cousins        | أبناء العم/الخال | family members | أفراد العائلة | student                    | طالب                 |
| friendly       | ودود             | baby           | طفل رضيع      | cute                       | لطيف                 |
| Sham El-Nessim | عيد شم النسيم    | Mother's Day   | عيد الأم      | 6 <sup>th</sup> of October | عيد السادس من أكتوبر |
| celebration    | احتفال           | brave          | شجاع          | soldiers                   | جنود                 |
| salted fish    | سمك مملح         | remind         | يُذكر         | play                       | يلعب                 |
| take           | يأخذ             | cook           | يطبخ          | help                       | يساعد                |
| food           | طعام             | every day      | كل يوم        | story                      | قصة                  |
| do             | يفعل             | love           | يحب           | grow                       | ينمو / يكبر          |
| doctor         | طبيبة            | teacher        | معلم          | baker                      | خباز                 |
| patients       | مرضى             | delicious      | لذيذ          | bread                      | خبز                  |
| the world      | العالم           | bake           | يخبز          | travel                     | يسافر                |
| brother        | أخ               | favorite       | مفضل          | lunch                      | وجبة الغداء          |
| aunt           | عمة/خالدة        | garden         | حديقة         | farmer                     | مزارع                |
| heavy          | ثقيل             | eat            | يأكل          | pilot                      | طيار                 |
| Eid Al-Fitr    | عيد الفطر        | read           | يقرأ          | around                     | حول                  |



## Phonics Focus

x /gz/

exam

اختبار

exit

مخرج

example

مثال

exercise

يتدرب / يتمرّن

examine

يفحص

exist

يوجد

ph /f/

phone

هاتف

photo

صورة

elephant

فيل

graph

رسم بياني

alphabet

حروف الهجاء

## Language in Use

### Possessive Adjectives

صفات الملكية

. We use possessive adjectives to show that something belongs to someone.

| Subject Pronouns<br>ضمائر الفاعل | Possessive Adjectives<br>صفات الملكية | Example                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I<br>أنا                         | my                                    |  My mother is a teacher.<br>أمي معلمة. |
| He<br>هو (مفرد مذكر)             | his                                   |  His T-shirt is blue.<br>قميصه أزرق.   |
| She<br>هي (مفرد مؤنث)            | her                                   |  Her cat is friendly.<br>قطتها ودودة.  |

## General Practice on Unit (2)

### Listening

1



Listen and write the missing sounds: — استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

- A ① e \_ am      ② \_ \_ one      ③ gra \_ \_      ④ e \_ ercise  
 B ① e \_ ample      ② \_ \_ oto      ③ e \_ ist      ④ ele \_ \_ ant

### Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① My ..... gives us homework every day.  
 a) doctor      b) teacher      c) baker
- ② This is Ziad. .... bag is heavy.  
 a) His      b) Her      c) My
- ③ A ..... wears a uniform and flies people to different countries.  
 a) baker      b) pilot      c) farmer
- ④ The ..... checked my temperature and gave me medicine.  
 a) baker      b) teacher      c) doctor
- ⑤ My brother ..... me do my homework.  
 a) reads      b) helps      c) takes
- ⑥ I have a toy car. .... car is red.  
 a) My      b) His      c) Her
- ⑦ The ..... made a big cake for my birthday.  
 a) teacher      b) doctor      c) baker
- ⑧ A ..... works on a farm and grows food.  
 a) doctor      b) farmer      c) baker

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

A

(pilot – aunt – doctor – baker)

My mother is a (1)..... . She helps sick people. My father is a (2)..... .  
 He flies airplanes. My (3)..... is a teacher and works at a school. My  
 cousin is a (4)..... who makes delicious bread.



## B (Sham El-Nessim – 6<sup>th</sup> of October – Mother's Day – Eid Al-Fitr)

Every year, we celebrate special days in Egypt. On (1)....., we thank our mothers and give them presents. (2)..... is a fun holiday where people enjoy the outdoors and eat traditional food. In (3)..... we wear new clothes and visit our family members. In (4)....., we remember our brave soldiers.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Eid is a happy time for everyone. On Eid, I wake up early and wear new clothes. I visit my cousins and grandparents. We eat cookies and other tasty food. I get some money and small gifts. I love Eid because I have fun with my family.

### A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 We visit our grandparents and .....  
a) friends                      b) cousins                      c) teachers
- 2 I get small gifts, and some .....  
a) milk                      b) toys                      c) money

### B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do you wear on Eid when you wake up early?  
.....
- 4 Why do you love Eid?  
.....

### 5 Reorder to make sentences: أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

A 1 of – takes – She – patients – care.  
.....

2 stories – grandfather – funny – tells me – My.  
.....

3 share – I – to – like – my toys.  
.....

4 are – books – my – Where?  
.....

**B** ① Where – your – do – live – cousins?

② your – favorite – color – is – What?

③ wants – be – to – a – Ahmed – pilot.

④ The – cows – farmer – feeds – his.

**6 Punctuate the following:** \_\_\_\_\_ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

**A** ① a farmer grows vegetables and fruits

② what does a doctor do

③ dina is a kind doctor

④ We visited our cousins in giza last friday.

**B** ① Ali and i went to the library on monday.

② where is your school bag

③ the pilot flies a big airplane

④ who is your best friend



## Revision on Unit 3

### Vocabulary

|                      |                |                        |                  |                 |             |
|----------------------|----------------|------------------------|------------------|-----------------|-------------|
| house                | منزل           | library                | مكتبة            | supermarket     | سوبرماركت   |
| train station        | محطة قطار      | museum                 | متحف             | early           | مبكراً      |
| shopping             | التسوق         | fun                    | ممتع             | train           | قطار        |
| busy                 | مشغول/مزدحم    | whole                  | كل               | The Cairo Tower | برج القاهرة |
| The Pyramids of Giza | أهرامات الجيزة | holiday                | إجازة            | city            | مدينة       |
| camel                | جمل            | toy car                | سيارة لعبة       | adventure       | مغامرة      |
| curtain              | ستارة          | stuck                  | عالق             | room            | غرفة        |
| students             | طلاب           | trip                   | رحلة قصيرة       | table           | منضدة       |
| monkeys              | قرود           | elephants              | أفيال            | zoo             | حديقة حيوان |
| juice                | عصير           | water                  | ماء              | ticket          | تذكرة       |
| park                 | حديقة عامة     | The Alexandria Library | مكتبة الاسكندرية | grade           | صف دراسي    |
| in the morning       | في الصباح      | great                  | عظيم             | lions           | أسود        |
| in the afternoon     | في الظهر       | couch                  | أريكة (كنبة)     | sandwiches      | ساندويتشات  |

### Phonics Focus

**ff**

cuff

كُم قميص

off

يطفىء (إيقاف)

staff

فريق عمل

**ll**

bell

جرس

pull

يسحب

tell

يخبر

**ss**

grass

حشائش

less

أقل

miss

يفقد

**zz**

buzz

طنين

fuzz

وبر

jazz

موسيقى الجاز

**ck**

duck

بطة

sock

جورب

back

ظهر

neck

رقبة

truck

شاحنة كبيرة

## • Prepositions of Place:

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان:

- They are words that tell you where something is found.



on على

e.g. The cat is **on** the chair.



between بين

e.g. The ball is **between** the shoes.



under تحت

e.g. The dog is **under** the table.



in داخل/ في

e.g. The apple is **in** the box.



behind خلف

e.g. The boy is **behind** the door.



in front of أمام

e.g. The girl is **in front of** the school.

## • The Past Simple Tense:

زمن الماضي البسيط:

Usage

الاستخدام

We use the past tense to talk about something that already happened.

Form

التكوين

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثاني للفعل

- يتكون التصريف الثاني للفعل مع الأفعال المنتظمة (Regular verbs) بإضافة /ed /d /ied:

e.g. visit + **ed** = visited/ work + **ed** = worked

معظم الأفعال يضاف إليها **ed**

e.g. like + **d** = liked/ love + **d** = loved

إذا انتهى الفعل بـ "e" يضاف إليه "d" فقط

Examples

أمثلة

| ed        |            | d         |            |
|-----------|------------|-----------|------------|
| Base Verb | Past Tense | Base Verb | Past Tense |
| jump      | jumped     | smile     | smiled     |
| climb     | climbed    | close     | closed     |
| walk      | walked     | dance     | danced     |
| play      | played     | like      | liked      |



## General Practice on Unit (3)

### Listening



**1** Listen and write the missing sounds: استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

- A** ① gra\_\_ ② te\_\_ ③ tru\_\_ ④ ne\_\_  
**B** ① be\_\_ ② o\_\_ ③ so\_\_ ④ ja\_\_

### Reading

**2** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① The ..... has books about animals.  
 a) museum b) library c) supermarket
- ② The ..... has many fresh fruits and vegetables.  
 a) hospital b) supermarket c) bakery
- ③ We ..... football at school two days ago.  
 a) play b) played c) playing
- ④ Asser ..... to Luxor in 2022.  
 a) travels b) travel c) traveled
- ⑤ The train arrived late at the ..... today.  
 a) house b) train station c) supermarket
- ⑥ The park is ..... the school and the library.  
 a) on b) under c) between
- ⑦ The school is ..... the restaurant.  
 a) next to b) between c) under

**3** Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

**A (Cairo Tower – Pyramids – visited – Alexandria Library)**

Last holiday, I (1)..... three famous places in Egypt. First, I went to the (2)..... and saw the whole city from the top. Then, I visited to the (3)..... and read some amazing books. Finally, I visited the (4)..... of Giza. They were very big and old. It was a great trip!

## B

(park – supermarket – library – museum)

On Saturday, I had a fun day with my family. In the morning, we went to the (1)..... to buy fruits and vegetables. Then, we visited the (2)..... and saw old things from the past. After that, we stopped by the (3)..... to read some books. In the afternoon, we played at the (4)..... . It was a great day!

**4** Read the text and answer the questions: \_\_\_\_\_ اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My room is small but nice. There is a bed next to the window. There is a clock on the wall. I keep my toys in a big box. The box is under the table. There is a chair in front of the desk. I put my school bag behind the door. There is a small rug between the bed and the table. I like spending time in my room.

**A** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1** There is a ..... on the wall.  
a) bag                      b) clock                      c) car
- 2** I keep my toys ..... a big box.  
a) on                      b) in                      c) next to

**B Answer the following questions:**

- ③ What is between the bed and the table?

- ④ Where is the chair?

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** \_\_\_\_\_ أعدد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- A** ① classroom – in front of – I – the – stand.

- ② train – late – arrived – The.

- ③ the – visited – We – Pyramids of Giza.



④ books – read – Alexandria Library – at – the – I.

B ① children – play – The – next to – river – the.

② the – visited – Friday – zoo – We – last.

③ chair – hiding – is – The cat – under – the.

④ did – go – lunch – Where – he – after?

6 Punctuate the following: \_\_\_\_\_ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

A ① hadeer visited the cairo Tower with her family.

② when did you visit the library

③ children play happily in the park

④ whose bag is on the chair

B ① my school is near the train station

② we visited the Cairo Tower last summer

③ my friend lives near the school

④ my family visited the zoo last sunday

## Revision on Unit 4

### Vocabulary

|                |                  |                |             |           |                     |
|----------------|------------------|----------------|-------------|-----------|---------------------|
| happy          | سعيد             | sad            | حزين        | excited   | متحمس               |
| shy            | خجول             | tired          | متعب        | bored     | يشعر بالملل (زهقان) |
| quickly        | بسرعة            | sound          | صوت         | because   | لأن                 |
| free           | حر (طليق)        | team           | فريق        | sunny day | يوم مشمس            |
| picture        | صورة             | knee           | ركبة        | now       | الآن                |
| but            | لكن              | felt better    | شعر بالتحسن | before    | قبل                 |
| football match | مباراة كرة القدم | when           | عندما       | mistakes  | أخطاء               |
| after          | بعد              | goal           | هدف         | angry     | غاضب                |
| proud          | فخور             | worried (adj.) | قلق         | scared    | خائف                |
| again          | مرة أخرى         | himself        | نفسه        | hole      | حفرة                |
| nervous        | متوتر            |                |             |           |                     |

### Phonics Focus

- "c" makes a hard /k/ sound when it is followed by (a, o, or u) or at the end of a word as "ck".

- حرف "c" ينطق /k/ عندما يأتي بعده (a, o أو u) أو عندما يأتي في نهاية الكلمة على شكل "ck".

**Hard "c" = /k/**

|         |      |           |      |       |                  |        |       |
|---------|------|-----------|------|-------|------------------|--------|-------|
| cat     | قطعة | cry       | يبكى | stuck | علق بشيء (التصق) | licked | لعت   |
| cold    | بارد | carry     | يحمل | coat  | معطف (بالطو)     | cup    | فنجان |
| because | لأن  | carefully | بحرص | came  | أتى              |        |       |

**Soft "c" = sound**

- "c" makes the soft /s/ sound when followed by (e, i, or y).

- حرف "c" ينطق /s/ عندما يأتي بعده (e) أو عندما يأتي بعده (i, e أو y).

|       |            |      |      |      |                  |        |          |
|-------|------------|------|------|------|------------------|--------|----------|
| face  | وجه        | nice | رائع | city | مدينة            | pencil | قلم رصاص |
| fence | سياج (سور) | ice  | ثلج  | cent | سنت (وحدة نقدية) |        |          |



## Language in Use

• **The Past Simple Tense "Irregular verbs":** ——— زمن الماضي البسيط "الأفعال غير المنتظمة":

**Usage:** We use the past tense to talk about something that happened.

### Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل

Irregular verbs are special words! They **DO NOT** add **-ed** to make the past tense. Their past tense form is different.

الأفعال غير المنتظمة هي كلمات خاصة! فهي لا يُضاف لها "ed" لتكوين زمن الماضي. شكلها في الماضي يكون مختلفًا.

e.g. - go → went

- eat → ate

e.g. - She **went** to the park.

هي ذهبت إلى الحديقة.

### Conjugation of Verbs

| Irregular Verbs<br>أفعال غير منتظمة | Present |       | Past  |  | Present |      | Past |  |
|-------------------------------------|---------|-------|-------|--|---------|------|------|--|
|                                     |         |       |       |  |         |      |      |  |
|                                     | am/is   | يكون  | was   |  | are     | يكون | were |  |
|                                     | hear    | يسمع  | heard |  | see     | يرى  | saw  |  |
|                                     | stick   | يلتصق | stuck |  | hold    | يمسك | held |  |
|                                     | feel    | يشعر  | felt  |  | do      | يفعل | did  |  |
|                                     | come    | يأتي  | came  |  | have    | يملك | had  |  |
|                                     | hurt    | يؤذي  | hurt  |  | fall    | يسقط | fell |  |
|                                     | win     | يفوز  | won   |  | say     | يقول | said |  |

## General Practice on Unit (4)

### Listening



**1** Listen and write the missing sounds: — استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

- A ① \_ame      ② ni\_e      ③ \_arry      ④ \_up  
B ① \_old      ② pen\_il      ③ \_ity      ④ fa\_e

### Reading

**2** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① She felt ..... about her birthday party.  
a) tired      b) sad      c) excited
- ② Sama ..... better after her friend helped her.  
a) feel      b) felt      c) feels
- ③ The boy got ..... when he lost the game.  
a) happy      b) excited      c) angry
- ④ I ..... scared of the dog yesterday.  
a) am      b) was      c) were
- ⑤ She watched TV ..... she finished her homework early.  
a) when      b) but      c) because
- ⑥ I studied hard, ..... I didn't pass the test.  
a) but      b) so      c) for
- ⑦ He was ..... about making mistakes.  
a) excited      b) happy      c) worried
- ⑧ The children ..... excited to open their gifts yesterday.  
a) was      b) were      c) are

**3** Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

A

(started - shy - angry - tired)

Yesterday, I went to a new school. At first, I felt (1)..... because I didn't know anyone. Later, I got excited when I meet a new friend. After playing for a while, I was (2)..... and wanted to rest. In the afternoon, it (3)..... raining, and I felt a bit (4)..... because we couldn't play outside.



## B

**(went – felt – helped – cried)**

It was a cold morning, but we (1)..... to the park. My little brother (2)..... when he fell on the ground. I (3)..... him stand up and gave him his toy. After that, he (4)..... much better and smiled again.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** \_\_\_\_\_ اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, we took our crayons and went to the park with my friends. We sat on the grass there. I drew a picture of a tree. My friend drew a bird. Then, we sang a song together. We watched the birds fly in the sky. It was a nice day. We were very happy.

**A** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- [illegible]

**E Answer the following questions:**

- ③ Where did they sit?

- ④ What did they watch?

## Writing

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** \_\_\_\_\_ أعدد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- A ① do – How – feel – you?

- ② I – you – hurt – Did?

- ③ students – bored – are – These.

- ④ you – are – Why – today – excited?

B ① yesterday – We – to – went – the – beach.

② cooked – Mom – dinner – delicious – a.

③ saw – I – a – bird – big.

④ was – tired – last – He – night – very.

6 Punctuate the following: \_\_\_\_\_ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

A ① my friend and i went to the park yesterday.

② where did you put my book

③ we had ice cream after lunch

④ nour felt sad and scared

B ① why are you so happy today

② i was sad when my pet got sick

③ i am scared of the dark

④ he looked angry after the game



## Revision on Unit 5

### Vocabulary

|          |               |                 |             |              |        |
|----------|---------------|-----------------|-------------|--------------|--------|
| clean    | ينظف          | tidy up the bed | يرتب السرير | share        | يشارك  |
| win      | يفوز          | cheer           | يهتف / يشجع | donate       | يتبرع  |
| table    | منضدة         | floor           | أرضية       | plants       | نباتات |
| piece of | قطعة من       | wood            | خشب         | bridge       | كوبرى  |
| project  | مشروع         | ideas           | أفكار       | care         | اهتمام |
| fun      | ممتع          | fair            | عادل / منصف | community    | مجتمع  |
| street   | شارع          | toys            | ألعاب       | children     | أطفال  |
| care     | يهتم          | puddle          | بركة ماء    | coach        | مدرب   |
| teamwork | العمل الجماعي | tail            | ذيل         | neighborhood | حي     |

### Phonics Focus

“g” has a hard sound when followed by: (a, o, or u) or at the end of a word.

e.g. game - dog

**g** /g/

|       |      |     |      |      |     |
|-------|------|-----|------|------|-----|
| gum   | لبان | dog | كلب  | good | جيد |
| green | أخضر | big | كبير |      |     |

“g” usually makes a soft sound /dʒ/ when it is followed by (e, i, or y).

**g** /dʒ/

|         |       |       |     |      |      |      |     |
|---------|-------|-------|-----|------|------|------|-----|
| giraffe | زرافة | Egypt | مصر | page | صفحة | huge | ضخم |
|---------|-------|-------|-----|------|------|------|-----|

Action verbs أفعال الحركة

help يساعد



Salma **helps** Youssef with the project.  
تساعد سلمى يوسف في المشروع.

solve يحل



They **solve** the problem together.  
يحلان المشكلة معًا.

find يجد



Youssef **finds** a good idea.  
يجد يوسف فكرة جيدة.

work يعمل



They **work** as a team.  
يعملان كفريق واحد.

plan يخطط



They **plan** their project first.  
يخططان للمشروع أولًا.

fix يصلح



Salma **fixes** the poster.  
تُصلح سلمى الملصق.

agree يتفق



They **agree** on what to do.  
يتفقان على ما يجب فعله.



## General Practice on Unit (5)

### Listening



**1** Listen and write the missing sounds: —————: استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

- A ① do —      ② —iraffe      ③ pa — e      ④ —um  
 B ① E—ypt      ② bi—      ③ —ood      ④ hu—e

### Reading

**2** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: —————: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① Every day, I help my family by doing my .....  
 a) chores                                      b) win                                      c) donate
- ② After waking up, I always ..... my bed.  
 a) make                                      b) care                                      c) share
- ③ It is kind to ..... your toys with your friends.  
 a) care                                      b) share                                      c) chores
- ④ We should ..... for people who need help.  
 a) donate                                      b) work                                      c) win
- ⑤ I ..... a prize in the school race last week.  
 a) did                                      b) won                                      c) shared
- ⑥ Parents ..... for their children every day.  
 a) share                                      b) care                                      c) donate
- ⑦ Asmaa can ..... her broken toy.  
 a) share                                      b) fix                                      c) cheer
- ⑧ When Eslam scored the goal, the team .....  
 a) cheered                                      b) fixed                                      c) shared

**3** Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

(shared – cheered – had – fixed)

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

Yesterday was a great day at school. My friend's pencil case was broken, so I (1)..... it for her. At lunch, we (2)..... our sandwiches and cookies. In the afternoon, our class played a game, and when my team won, everyone (3)..... loudly. We (4)..... so much fun together!.

## B

**(shared – donated – planted – cleaned)**

Last weekend, we had a school activity day. We (1)..... our snacks with each other during the break. Then, we (2)..... the playground by picking up litter. After that, we (3)..... flowers in the school garden. At the end of the day, we (4)..... some books and toys to children in need. It was a fun and nice day!

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** \_\_\_\_\_ اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

It was Sports Day at school. We wore sports clothes. We went to the playground. I ran in a race. I did not win, but I was happy. My friend Amira won. I clapped for her. It was a fun day!

**A** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- [illegible]

**B Answer the following questions:**

- ③ Who won the race?

- ④ How was the day?

## Writing

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- A** ① match – boys – football – win – The – the.

- ② with – food – shares – Sara – sister – her.

- ③ should – You – make – bed – your.

- ④ were – everywhere – plants – green – There.



B ① They – ideas – to – started – share.

② my – I – mother – help – chores – with.

③ and – played – friends – his – Omar – football.

④ made – Teamwork – game – the – fun.

6 Punctuate the following: \_\_\_\_\_ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

A ① who scored the goal

② Ahmed and mariam donate clothes to people

③ farida plants a tree near her house

④ they agree on what to do

B ① hady and salma want to help their neighborhood.

② salma and youssef had a project at school.

③ they plant trees near the school

④ they showed care and worked well together

## Revision on Unit 6

### Vocabulary

|            |             |           |             |              |                 |
|------------|-------------|-----------|-------------|--------------|-----------------|
| goal       | هدف         | try       | يحاول       | step         | خطوة            |
| practice   | يتدرب/يمارس | celebrate | يحتفل       | success      | النجاح          |
| get better | يتحسن       | every day | كل يوم      | mud          | طين             |
| out side   | بالخارج     | feet      | أقدام       | toy car      | سيارة لعبة      |
| rock       | صخرة        | cartoon   | كارتون      | screen       | شاشة            |
| exam       | اختبار      | question  | سؤال        | full mark    | الدرجة النهائية |
| well done  | أحسن        | fast      | سريع        | school field | فناء المدرسة    |
| race       | سباق        | both      | كل من       | cheers       | هتافات          |
| plan       | يخطط        | fast      | سريع        | great        | عظيم            |
| reach      | يصل         | math      | رياضيات     | one day      | ذات يوم         |
| spring     | فصل الربيع  | pedals    | دواسات/بدال |              |                 |

### Phonics Focus

#### Three-Consonant Clusters

**spr-**

spring

فصل الربيع

spray

يرش

**spl-**

splash

طرطشة

split

تتحطم/تتكسر

**scr-**

screen

شاشة

scratch

يخريش

**str-**

string

خيوط

street

شارع



## Language in Use

• **The Present Continuous Tense:** زمن المضارع المستمر:

**Usage:** We use the present continuous tense to talk about actions happening now or around now.

**Affirmative Form:** صيغة الإثبات:

|                             |   |           |                            |
|-----------------------------|---|-----------|----------------------------|
| I                           | → | am = 'm   | + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing. |
| He - She - It<br>فاعل مفرد  | → | is = 's   |                            |
| We - You - They<br>فاعل جمع | → | are = 're |                            |



I am **trying** to be a better student.

Samer is **scoring** a goal.



The boys **are celebrating**.

## General Practice on Unit (6)

### Listening



1 Listen and write the missing sounds: ————— استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

- A ① ———ay      ② ———ing      ③ ———it      ④ ———een  
 B ① ———eet      ② ———atch      ③ ———ash      ④ ———ing

### Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: ————— اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① I need to ..... every day to get better at reading.  
 a) celebrate      b) practice      c) step
- ② I tried to ..... the top shelf.  
 a) goal      b) reach      c) success
- ③ She ..... the piano right now.  
 a) playing      b) is playing      c) play
- ④ They ..... a movie at the moment.  
 a) is watching      b) are watching      c) watches
- ⑤ The first ..... is to listen carefully.  
 a) step      b) dish      c) reach
- ⑥ Let's make a ..... for the school trip.  
 a) table      b) plan      c) reach
- ⑦ My ..... is to learn ten new words this week.  
 a) step      b) goal      c) celebrate
- ⑧ He ..... a letter to his friend now.  
 a) is writing      b) are writing      c) wrote

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

A (goal – step – celebrate – practice)

I am in primary 3. I have a (1) ..... to read well. I (2) ..... every day.  
 The first (3) ..... is to read slowly. I (4) ..... when I read better.



## B

## (better – plan – practice – English)

Every day, I try to learn something new. I make a (1)..... to study for one hour and practice speaking (2)..... with my friends. Even when it is hard, I keep trying because (3)..... helps me improve. I know that with a good plan and practice, I will get (4)..... .

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** ..... اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My best friend's name is Sara. She is kind and funny. We like to play games and read books together. Sara always helps me when I am sad. We go to school every day, and we sit next to each other in class. I am happy to have a best friend like Sara.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 My best friend's name is .....  
 a) Sara                                      b) Sam                                      c) Salma
- 2 Sara is ..... and funny.  
 a) kind                                      b) angry                                      c) quiet

**B Answer the following questions:**

3 What do they like to do together?

.....

4 Where do they sit in class?

.....

### Writing

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

A 1 practiced – She – because – felt – strong – she.

2 made – a – He – plan.

3 celebrated – happy – and – felt – Salwa.

4 runner – fast – is – Yara – a.

B ① questions – answered – all – Hamza – the.

② will – They – their – reach – goal.

③ practice – every – We – day.

④ helped – my – friend – I.

6 Punctuate the following: \_\_\_\_\_ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

A ① she practices piano every sunday.

② where do you do your homework

③ they finished their homework on time

④ he made a good plan

B ① we felt happy after the game

② who made a good plan

③ they are going to the park this afternoon

④ he is crying because he is hurt



## Punctuation Marks علامات الترقيم



### Capital Letters الحروف الكبيرة

- Capital letters ..... A, B, C, D, E, etc.
- Small letters ..... a, b, c, d, e, etc.

We use capital letters at the beginning of the sentence.

نستخدم الحروف الكبيرة في بداية الجملة.

e.g. Salma wrote and Youssef drew.



### Period (full stop) النقطة

We use a period (.) at the end of the sentence.

نستخدم النقطة في نهاية الجملة.

e.g. They showed care and worked together.



### Question Mark علامة الاستفهام

When we write questions, we use a question mark “?” at the end of the question.

نستخدم علامة الاستفهام في نهاية السؤال.

e.g. What did they do first?



### Comma الفاصلة السفلية

We put a comma “,” after (First – Then – Finally).

نضع الفاصلة السفلية بعد (أولاً – بعد ذلك – في النهاية).

e.g. Finally, the teacher was happy.

# Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present            | Past     | Present               | Past      | Present          | Past       |
|--------------------|----------|-----------------------|-----------|------------------|------------|
| pass يمر على       | passed   | visit يزور            | visited   | pull يسحب        | pulled     |
| miss يفتقد         | missed   | explore يكتشف         | explored  | love يحب         | loved      |
| travel يسافر       | traveled | roll يتدحرج/ ينقلب    | rolled    | look for يبحث عن | looked for |
| check يفحص/ يتأكد  | checked  | use يستخدم            | used      | smile يتسم       | smiled     |
| jump يقفز          | jumped   | climb يتسلق           | climbed   | walk يمشي        | walked     |
| play يلعب          | played   | close يغلق            | closed    | dance يرقص       | danced     |
| like يحب           | liked    | cry يبكي              | cried     | work يعمل        | worked     |
| follow يتبع        | followed | save ينقذ             | saved     | lick يلعق        | licked     |
| carry يحمل         | carried  | help يساعد            | helped    | start يبدأ       | started    |
| score يسجل         | scored   | hug يعانق             | hugged    | ask يسأل / يطلب  | asked      |
| cross يعبر         | crossed  | wag يهز               | wagged    | solve يحل        | solved     |
| plan يخطط          | planned  | fix يصلح              | fixed     | agree يوافق      | agreed     |
| plant يزرع         | planted  | donate يتبرع          | donated   | finish ينهي      | finished   |
| try يحاول          | tried    | practice يتدرب/ يمارس | practiced | celebrate يحتفل  | celebrated |
| reach يصل          | reached  | train يتدرب           | trained   | kick يركل        | kicked     |
| splash يطرطش الماء | splashed | spray يرش             | sprayed   | bump تصطدم       | bumped     |
| bounce ترتد/ ترتد  | bounced  | laugh يضحك            | laughed   | watch يشاهد      | watched    |
| push يدفع          | pushed   | study يذاكر           | studied   | answer يجيب      | answered   |
| clap يصفق          | clapped  | need يحتاج            | needed    | learn يتعلم      | learned    |



## أفعال غير منتظمة Irregular Verbs

| Present     | Past  | Present       | Past  | Present            | Past    |
|-------------|-------|---------------|-------|--------------------|---------|
| leave يغادر | left  | go يذهب       | went  | tell يخبر          | told    |
| read يقرأ   | read  | take يأخذ     | took  | put يضع            | put     |
| come يأتي   | came  | see يرى       | saw   | drink يشرب         | drank   |
| am/is يكون  | was   | are يكون      | were  | hear يسمع          | heard   |
| stick يلتصق | stuck | feel يشعر     | felt  | hold يمسك          | held    |
| do يفعل     | did   | have يمتلك    | had   | draw يرسم          | drew    |
| hurt يؤذي   | hurt  | fall يسقط     | fell  | say يقول           | said    |
| win يفوز    | won   | find يجد      | found | write يكتب         | wrote   |
| make يصنع   | made  | spin يلف/يدور | spun  | split تتحطم/تتكسر  | split   |
| run يجري    | ran   | ride يركب     | rode  | bring يُحضِر/يُجلب | brought |

# Final Tests

Test

1

30

## (A) Listening

1



Listen and write the missing sounds: — استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

1 \_\_ ale

2 gra\_\_

3 \_\_ am

4 \_\_ one

## (B) Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

1 When class starts, we .....

a) leave

b) shout

c) sit down

2 I ..... my teeth in the morning.

a) make

b) brush

c) wake

3 Mustafa ..... a doctor.

a) am

b) is

c) are

4 This is Ahmed. .... car is red.

a) My

b) His

c) Her

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

2

(baker – doctor – travels – teacher)

People have different jobs. A (1) ..... works at a school. A (2) ..... cares for sick people. A (3) ..... bakes delicious bread and cakes. A pilot (4) ..... around the world.

4

Read the text and answer the questions: — اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

Salma is a good girl. She wakes up at 7 am. She brushes her teeth and gets dressed. After she has breakfast, she goes to school. After school, she goes home and does her homework.



**A** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- [illegible]

**B Answer the following questions:**

- ③ What two things does Salma do before breakfast?  
.....
- ④ What does Salma do when she gets home after school?

### (C) Writing

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** \_\_\_\_\_ أعدد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- ① did – Adam – Where – Omar – go – and?
- .....
- ② a picture – pencil – drew – Sara – her – with.

**6 Punctuate the following:** \_\_\_\_\_ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 many lives in Giza
- 2 Where did aya go yesterday

**7** Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: \_\_\_\_\_ اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

**“My daily routine”**  
(wake up – the bed – school)

## (A) Listening

1



Listen and write the missing sounds: — استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

1

\_iraffe

2

pen\_il

3

e\_ample

4

\_ood

## (B) Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

1

My father ..... me to school.

a) cooks

b) takes

c) reads

2

We buy food at the .....

a) supermarket

b) library

c) train station

3

Sara ..... to the park because she was bored.

a) go

b) goes

c) went

4

The children ..... now.

a) celebrates

b) celebrated

c) are celebrating

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(proud – answered – nervous – studied)

Omar is a pupil. He (1) ..... hard every day for his math exam.

On the exam day, he felt (2) ..... . Then, he (3) ..... all

the questions. Later, the teacher told him that he got full marks. Tamer felt

very (4) ..... and happy.

4

Read the text and answer the questions: — اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

Mazen is trying to get better at football. He is training every day. He is kicking the ball and splashing in the mud. Now, he is playing a match with his friends. He is scoring a goal and is feeling very proud.





## (A) Listening

1



Listen and write the missing sounds: — استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

1 \_\_ray

2 fa\_\_

3 so\_\_

4 \_\_it

## (B) Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

1 We can read books at the .....

a) library

b) supermarket

c) club

2 We visited the Cairo Tower and ..... many pictures.

a) went

b) read

c) took

3 We ..... to the cinema yesterday.

a) go

b) went

c) is going

4 The cat is ..... the bed.

a) between

b) under

c) in front

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

2

(Then – happy – Finally – chores)

Rana and Hani are at home. Their mother asks them to do some (1).....

First, they tidy up the living room. (2)....., they clean the table and the

floor. (3)....., the house looks clean. They are (4)..... to help.

4

Read the text and answer the questions: — اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

Ali, Mustafa and Yasser went to the park. There were green plants everywhere. They saw a big puddle. It was too big to jump over. Ali found a piece of wood. Mustafa and Yasser helped him make a good bridge. They crossed over the bridge and played. A dog came by and wagged its tail. They were happy.



**A** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1** Ali, Mustafa, and Yasser went to the .....  
a) school                      b) park                      c) market
- 2** The dog wagged its .....  
a) tail                      b) leg                      c) ear

**B Answer the following questions:**

- ③ What did they see at the park?
- .....
- ④ How did the children feel at the end?

### (C) Writing

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** \_\_\_\_\_ أعدد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- ① grandfather – My – farmer – is – a.
- ② flowers – the garden – in – We – plant.

**6 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- omar and his friends played football at school
- Everyone cheered when karim scored a goal

**7** Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: \_\_\_\_\_ اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

**“My goal”**

(doctor – study – sick)

## (A) Listening

1



Listen and write the missing sounds: — استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

1

\_\_lash

2

cu\_\_

3

ele\_\_ant

4

\_\_ite

## (B) Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

1

I am ..... I make my friends laugh.

a) angry

b) bored

c) funny

2

I ..... my bed to keep it tidy.

a) brush

b) make

c) wake

3

Hana has a cat. .... cat is friendly.

a) My

b) His

c) Her

4

You ..... very kind.

a) is

b) are

d) am

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(holiday – Library – pictures – Pyramids)

Nada visited the Cairo Tower with her family. They took (1) ..... and saw the whole city. Next, they went to the great (2) ..... of Giza. Nada loved the camels! Then, they traveled to Alexandria. At the Alexandria (3) ....., she read fun books. It was the best (4) ..... she ever had!

4

Read the text and answer the questions: — اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

Egyptian people have several celebrations. Eid Al-Fitr is my favorite celebration after Ramadan. I also love Sham El-Nessim. We celebrate it in spring, as we go to the garden all day, play, and eat salted fish.



**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 Eid Al-Fitr happens after .....  
a) Ramadan                      b) school                      c) winter
- 2 We celebrate Sham El- Nessim in .....  
a) spring                      b) winter                      c) summer

**B Answer the following questions:**

- 3 What's your favorite celebration?  
.....
- 4 What do Egyptians do during Sham El-Nessim?  
.....

**(C) Writing**

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً: 2

- 1 year – Did – visit – last – you – the Pyramids?  
.....
- 2 We – the supermarket – to – walked – after – school.  
.....

**6 Punctuate the following:** ..... ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

- 1 do you like going to the amusement park  
.....
- 2 we went to the library yesterday  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:** ..... اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 7

**“A trip to the zoo”**  
(last Friday – monkey – happy)

.....

.....

.....

## (A) Listening

1



Listen and write the missing sounds: — استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

1

pu\_\_

2

sta\_\_

3

al\_\_abet

4

mi\_\_

## (B) Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

1

My grandma ..... a cake yesterday.

a) bake

b) baked

c) bakes

2

The chair is ..... the desk and the table.

a) on

b) in

c) between

3

Mona feels ..... when she can't answer the question.

a) happy

b) excited

c) sad

4

Ali ..... a stick under the couch.

a) made

b) cooked

c) found

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(stand – hurt – scared – drew)

One sunny day, Reem went to the park because she was bored. She

(1) ..... a picture with her pencil. She was happy and smiled at her friend.

Then she fell and (2) ..... her knee. Reem felt sad and (3) ..... Her

friend helped her (4) ..... up. Reem said, "Thank you" and

smiled again.

4

Read the text and answer the questions: — اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

Noura and Karim had a school project. At first they couldn't agree on what to do. Then they shared ideas. Noura wrote and Karim drew. Karim helped when Noura felt tired. They showed care and finished the project. Their teacher smiled and said, "Well done!"



**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 Noura and Karim had a school .....  
a) game                                      b) project                                      c) holiday
- 2 Noura ..... and Karim drew.  
a) walked                                      b) wrote                                      c) built

**B Answer the following questions:**

3 When did Karim help Noura?

4 What did the teacher say?

**(C) Writing**

5 **Reorder to make sentences:** ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً: 2

1 has – Sama – hair – long.

2 Where – weekend – Mustafa – go – last – did?

6 **Punctuate the following:** ..... ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

1 we can donate books to the school library

2 Sara and aya live in Cairo

7 **Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:** ..... اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 7

**“Different jobs”**

(doctor – pilot – farmer)

## (A) Listening



1

Listen and write the missing sounds: — استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

1 \_\_en

2 e\_am

3 \_reen

4 \_\_one

## (B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

1 We ..... old clothes to poor families.

a) practice

b) donate

c) agree

2 We work together to ..... the problem.

a) share

b) achieve

c) solve

3 My friends ..... in the garden now.

a) play

b) is playing

c) are playing

4 The book is ..... the table.

a) on

b) in

c) between

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(shy – homework – helpful – curly)

My friend is called Rana. She has (1)..... hair. She is very (2)..... She helps me with my (3)..... She feels (4)..... when she meets new people.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: — اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

This is my teacher, Mrs. Hana. She is very patient, kind, and funny. She always explains lessons clearly and helps her students learn. Mrs. Hana has curly brown hair and bright blue eyes. Everyone likes to listen to her stories.



**A** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- [illegible]

**Answer the following questions:**

- ③ What does Mrs. Hana always do?
- .....
- ④ What color is Mrs. Hana's hair?

### (C) Writing

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** \_\_\_\_\_ أعدد الترتيب لتكون جملاً: 2

- ① you – Nice – meet – to.
- ② We – went – Friday – shopping – last.

**6 Punctuate the following:** \_\_\_\_\_ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

- ① is the shopping mall open today
- ② how are you today

**7** Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: \_\_\_\_\_ اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

## “My friend Salma”

(short – curly hair – friendly)

## (A) Listening



1 Listen and write the missing sounds: — استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

- 1 \_\_ring      2 pa\_e      3 o\_\_      4 \_oat

## (B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

- 1 We bought bread and milk at the .....  
 a) train station      b) library      c) supermarket
- 2 He ran fast to ..... the bus.  
 a) reach      b) celebrate      c) cheer
- 3 Last week, we ..... the zoo.  
 a) visit      b) visited      c) visiting
- 4 Manal ..... her lunch now.  
 a) is eating      b) ate      c) eats

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(chips – ticket – monkeys – trip)

Last Monday, my family went on a (1) ..... to the zoo. We went by bus. At the zoo, we saw lions, (2) ....., and elephants. The (3) ..... was 20 pounds. For lunch, we ate sandwiches and (4) ..... We had a good day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: — اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

Lina and Sara were playing in the park. They heard a bird crying. They found the bird stuck under some branches. Lina moved the branches. Sara helped the bird get free. The bird flew away. They felt happy because they helped the bird.



**A** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- [illegible]

**B Answer the following questions:**

- ③ Where was the bird stuck?
- .....
- ④ How did Lina and Sara feel after helping the bird?

### (C) Writing

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** \_\_\_\_\_ أعدد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- ① the – plant – trees – They – school – near.
- ② today – have – I – exam – an.

**6 Punctuate the following:** \_\_\_\_\_ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- ① the Cairo tower is very tall  
.....
- ② how much was the ticket

**7** Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

## “Ahmed’s busy day”

(school – homework – club)

## (A) Listening

1



Listen and write the missing sounds: — استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

① \_\_oto

② we\_\_

③ \_um

④ hu\_e

## (B) Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

① He makes me laugh. He is .....

a) funny

b) angry

c) sad

② The Egyptian soldiers are .....

a) bad

b) brave

c) fast

③ Hani ..... a book right now.

a) is reading

b) read

c) reads

④ I ..... eight years old.

a) is

b) are

c) am

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(friends – salted – celebration – park)

Sham El-Nessim is my favorite (1)..... . On this day, we get up early. We go to the (2)..... . We eat colored eggs. Some people eat (3)..... fish. We play with our (4)..... .

4

Read the text and answer the questions: — اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

My family is very special to me. I have a mother, a father, and a little sister. We live together in a big house. My mother cooks delicious meals, and my father helps me with my homework. We love to play games and spend time together. My family makes me happy and safe.



**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- ① My mother ..... delicious meals.  
a) reads                      b) sleeps                      c) cooks
- ② My father helps me with my .....  
a) homework                      b) games                      c) toys

**B Answer the following questions:**

- ③ Where do they live?  
.....
- ④ What do they like to do together?  
.....

**(C) Writing**

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً: 2

- ① ate – chips – We – and – sandwiches.  
.....
- ② today – you – How – are – feeling?  
.....

**6 Punctuate the following:** ..... ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

- ① Sara and aya are good friends  
.....
- ② what's your name  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:** ..... اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 7

**“The farmer”**

(wake up – work – crops)

.....

.....

.....

## (A) Listening

1



Listen and write the missing sounds: — استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

① \_at

② ni\_e

③ du\_\_

④ pu\_\_

## (B) Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

① A ..... flies a plane.

a) driver

b) nurse

c) pilot

② A ..... is a group working together.

a) team

b) family

c) library

③ The dog is ..... the tree.

a) in front

b) between

c) behind

④ Judy ..... breakfast at 8 o'clock every day.

a) eat

b) eats

c) are eating

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

2

(Teamwork – donate – clean – team)

Ali and Mona want to help their neighborhood. They work as a (1) .....

First, they (2) ..... the street. Then, they plant trees near the school. After

that, they (3) ..... clothes and toys to children. Their teacher says,

“Well done!” (4) ..... makes the community better.

4

Read the text and answer the questions: — اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

My name is Eyad. I am nine years old. My father is a teacher. He works in a primary school. My mother is a nurse. She works in a big hospital. My grandfather is 70 years old. He always tells me stories. I have two brothers and one sisters.



**A** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1** Eyad is ..... years old.  
a) 7                                  b) 11                                  c) 9
- 2** Eyad has ..... brothers.  
a) two                                  b) three                                  c) four

**B Answer the following questions:**

- ③ How old is Eyad's grandfather?

- ④ Where does Eyad's mother work?

### (C) Writing

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** \_\_\_\_\_ أعدد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

2

- ① every day – mother – My – food – cooks – us.

- ② aunt – as – My – works – a doctor.

**6 Punctuate the following:** \_\_\_\_\_ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

- ① we read books at the library

- ② how old are you

**7** Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: \_\_\_\_\_ فقرة من ثلاث جمل ، (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

7

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

## “Mother’s Day”

(celebration – 21<sup>st</sup> March – present)

## (A) Listening



1 Listen and write the missing sounds: — استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

1 \_\_\_ at

2 bu\_\_\_

3 \_\_\_ll

4 \_\_\_oto

## (B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

1 I like to ..... my toys with my friends.

a) celebrate

b) share

c) playing

2 My brother is always ..... He doesn't talk much.

a) shy

b) friendly

c) funny

3 I ..... happy.

a) are

b) is

c) am

4 He ..... a film yesterday.

a) watching

b) watched

c) watches

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(English – friendly – helps – share)

Yara is my sister. She is (1)..... She likes to (2)..... her toys with me. She (3)..... me with my homework. She is good at (4).....

4 Read the text and answer the questions: — اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

Salma had a new project. She is a good student. She has a group of friends. She didn't know what to do. She asked her friends for ideas. Her friend Nada helped her much. She finished her project after three days. Her teacher was happy.



**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 ..... helped Salma with the project.  
a) Teacher                      b) Salma                      c) Nada
- 2 Salma finished her project after ..... days.  
a) four                      b) three                      c) five

**B Answer the following questions:**

3 What did Salma ask her friends for?

.....

4 How was Salma's teacher?

.....

**(C) Writing**

5 **Reorder to make sentences:** ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

2

1 did – Sara – What – draw – yesterday?

.....

2 uncle – her – visited – Hala – week – last.

.....

6 **Punctuate the following:** ..... ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

1 she plays football

.....

2 What did lama eat yesterday

.....

7 **Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:** ..... اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

7

**“A visit to the zoo”**

(bus – animals – happy)

.....  
.....  
.....

## (A) Listening

1



Listen and write the missing sounds: — استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

1 gra\_\_

2 \_\_eel

3 \_ff

4 e\_ist

## (B) Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

1 My ..... is to learn ten new words this week.

a) step

b) goal

c) celebrate

2 Asmaa can ..... her broken toy.

a) tidy

b) fix

c) cheer

3 The students ..... questions together.

a) answer

b) answers

c) answering

4 My mother ..... oranges yesterday.

a) bought

b) buy

c) buys

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(share – donate – cheer – plant)

We can help our community. We (1)..... clothes to people who need them. We (2)..... food with our friends. We (3)..... flowers and trees outside. We (4)..... when someone does well.

4

Read the text and answer the questions: — اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

Salma is a good girl. She wakes up at 7 a.m. She brushes her teeth and gets dressed. After she has breakfast, she goes to school by bus. After school, she goes home. She does her homework in the evening.



**A** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1** Salma wakes up ..... 7 a.m.  
a) at                      b) in                      c) on
- 2** Salma goes to school ..... she has breakfast.  
a) before                b) after                  c) then

**B Answer the following questions:**

- ③ How does Salma go to school?  
.....
- ④ When does Salma do her homework?

### (C) Writing

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- ① did— Adam — Where — Omar — go — and?
- ② a picture — pencil — drew — Sara — with her.

**6 Punctuate the following:** \_\_\_\_\_ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- ① hany lives in Giza
- ② Where did aya go yesterday

**7** Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: \_\_\_\_\_ اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

## “My daily routine”

(wake up – make the bed – go to school)

## (A) Listening

1



Listen and write the missing sounds: — استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

① \_arry

② le\_\_

③ pu\_\_

④ \_\_zz

## (B) Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

① They ..... in the park every week.

a) play

b) plan

c) fix

② My father is a ..... . He travels around the world.

a) teacher

b) doctor

c) pilot

③ She ..... cute.

a) are

b) is

c) am

④ We ..... cartoons every day.

a) watching

b) watch

c) watches

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(school – raise – kind – shout)

You should be polite at (1)..... . Always be (2)..... . Don't  
(3)..... in the classroom. You should (4)..... your hand to ask  
and answer questions.

4

Read the text and answer the questions: — اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

My name is Ola. I help my family with chores every day. I clean my room and wash the dishes. Sometimes, I help in the garden by watering the plants. Doing chores makes me feel helpful. My mother cooks food for us every day. My family is happy when we all work together.



**A** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1** Doing chores makes Ola feel .....  
a) tired                      b) helpful                      c) hungry
- 2** Ola washes the ..... after dinner.  
a) dishes                      b) toys                      c) clothes

**B Answer the following questions:**

- ③ What chores does Ola do every day?

- ④ Who cooks food every day?

### (C) Writing

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** \_\_\_\_\_ أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- ① eyes – have – I – brown.
- ② mother – His – at school – a teacher – is.

**6 Punctuate the following:** \_\_\_\_\_ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- ① adel swims in the pool

- ② What's this

**7** Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: \_\_\_\_\_ بفقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

**“What does your friend look like?”**

(tall – black hair – fast)

## (A) Listening



1

Listen and write the missing sounds: — استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

1 bu\_\_

2 \_ity

3 \_\_en

4 ele\_\_ant

## (B) Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

1 ..... is your name?

a) What

b) When

c) Who

2 The ..... grows vegetables in his field.

a) doctor

b) teacher

c) farmer

3 The book is ..... the table.

a) in

b) on

c) into

4 My grandfather ..... in a big house last year.

a) lived

b) lives

c) live

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(supermarket – came – fruit – lunch)

Yesterday, my mother went to the (1)..... . She bought some vegetables and (2)..... . She (3)..... home at three o'clock. She cooked (4)..... .

4

Read the text and answer the questions: — اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

Last week, I was at school. We had eight classes. Our first class was math. We learned numbers. I was very excited because I knew how to add big numbers. After break, we had a PE class. We played football. I was tired because I ran a lot.



**A** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- ①** We had ..... class after break.  
a) art                      b) PE                      c) science
- ②** We learned ..... at math class.  
a) numbers                b) animals                c) alphabet

**B Answer the following questions:**

- ③ Why were you excited?  
.....
- ④ What did you play at the PE class?

### (C) Writing

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** \_\_\_\_\_ أعدد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- ① hospital – Where – nearest – is – the?  
.....
- ② park – went – Ahmed – to – the.

**6 Punctuate the following:** \_\_\_\_\_ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 ramy studies in Cairo
- 2 did you watch the film

**7** Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: \_\_\_\_\_ بفقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

## “Teamwork”

(project – help – share)

## (A) Listening

1



Listen and write the missing sounds: — استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

① te\_\_

② tru\_\_

③ \_\_ring

④ \_\_eet

## (B) Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

① I ..... my bed.

a) care

b) read

c) make

② She was ..... She saw a lion.

a) scared

b) tired

c) bored

③ What ..... you do yesterday?

a) do

b) am

c) did

④ He has a pencil ..... his bag.

a) in

b) next

c) between

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(food – animals – library – play)

We enjoy visiting many places. We read books at the (1)..... . We (2)..... with our friends at the park. We buy (3)..... at the supermarket. We watch a lot of (4)..... at the zoo.

4

Read the text and answer the questions: — اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

Omar was nervous before his football match. When the match started, he was worried about making mistakes. But after he scored a goal, Omar felt proud of himself. He was happy when his team won the game.



**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:**

- 1 Omar played .....  
a) football                      b) tennis                      c) basketball
- 2 Omar ..... a goal.  
a) caught                      b) scored                      c) watched

**B Answer the following questions:**

- 3 How was Omar before the match?  
.....
- 4 Why did Omar feel proud of himself?  
.....

**(C) Writing**

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** ..... أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً: 2

- 1 at – works – He – school.  
.....
- 2 last – scared – was – Amal – week.  
.....

**6 Punctuate the following:** ..... ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

- 1 my cousin is a doctor  
.....
- 2 how are you  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements:** ..... اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 7

**“What you want to be when you grow up”**

(help – work – dream)

.....

.....

.....

## (A) Listening

1



Listen and write the missing sounds: — استمع واكتب الأصوات الناقصة:

6

1 so\_\_

2 al\_\_abet

3 e\_\_ercise

4 o\_\_

## (B) Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

1 They went on a trip to the .....

a) book

b) museum

c) breakfast

2 He bakes bread. He is a .....

a) pilot

b) farmer

c) baker

3 Amira is my friend. .... dress is blue.

a) My

b) His

c) Her

4 Now, Mustafa ..... his homework.

a) do

b) did

c) is doing

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(school – shy – curly – don't)

My name is Omar. I have (1)..... hair. I am (2)..... . I  
 (3)..... like to talk too much. I go to (4)..... every day.

4

Read the text and answer the questions: — اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

Youssef left his house early in the morning. First, he went to the library to read a book. Then, he and his mom went shopping at the supermarket. They passed the train station and saw a big train. After lunch, they visited the museum. In the afternoon, they played at the park.



**A** Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- [illegible]

**B Answer the following questions:**

- ③ What did Youssef and his mother do at the park?

- ④ Where did Youssef and his mother go shopping?

### (C) Writing

**5 Reorder to make sentences:** \_\_\_\_\_ أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً:

- ① the – visited – We – Pyramids of Giza.

- ② Cairo – visited – the – **They** – Tower – yesterday.

**6 Punctuate the following:** \_\_\_\_\_ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- ① we are egyptians.

- ② does he clean his room

**7** Write a paragraph of Three sentences (15) words using the following guiding elements: \_\_\_\_\_ اكتب فقرة من ثلاث حمل (15) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

## “Your dream job”

(a teacher – school – students)

## (A) Listening

1



Listen and number the pictures:

استمع ورقم الصور:

5

- ① train station    ② library    ③ pilot    ④ farmer    ⑤ grandfather



## (B) Reading

2

Read and fill in the gaps:

اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

8

(proud – donate – clean – neighborhood)

My name is Sara. I'm from Cairo. I like helping our (1) ..... I sometimes help (2) ..... the streets. My friend Aya and I (3) ..... clothes to people. We sometimes plant trees. We are (4) ..... to help.

## (C) Writing

3

Unscramble the words:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

5

1



emumsu

2



seohu

3



ohsclo

4



rteid

5



rpka



**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

8

- ① Mom went shopping at the .....  
a) hospital                      b) club                      c) supermarket
- ② A: How ..... are you? B: I'm nine.  
a) tall                      b) old                      c) big
- ③ Nada can't answer the question. She feels .....  
a) happy                      b) clever                      c) sad
- ④ A ..... grows plants.  
a) nurse                      b) farmer                      c) teacher
- ⑤ The cat is ..... the tree.  
a) in                      b) between                      c) behind
- ⑥ Malak ..... breakfast at 8 o'clock.  
a) eat                      b) eats                      c) are eating
- ⑦ Amr ..... a doctor.  
a) am                      b) is                      c) are
- ⑧ This is Kamal. .... jacket is red.  
a) My                      b) His                      c) Her

**5 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

① do you like tea

② I live in aswan

## (A) Listening



1

Listen and number the pictures:

استمع ورقم الصور:

5

1 cake

2 screen

3 cup

4 bike

5 wheel



## (B) Reading

2 Read and fill in the gaps:

اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

8

(teacher – takes – proud – hospital)

My father is a doctor. He works in a (1) ..... . He helps sick people. He has a car. He (2)..... me to school every day. My mother is a (3)..... . She works at a school. I'm (4)..... of them.

## (C) Writing

3 Unscramble the words:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

5

1



tploi

2



nargy

3



kebar

4



tdroco

5



twire



**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

8

① When I pass the exam, I feel .....

a) angry

b) bored

c) happy

② Sara is a ..... girl. She likes helping people.

a) sad

b) helpful

c) tired

③ When the teacher talks, you should .....

a) listen carefully

b) stand up

c) shout

④ You should ..... up your bed.

a) pick

b) tidy

c) cheer

⑤ Where ..... Adam go last Friday?

a) do

b) does

c) did

⑥ I ..... my friends yesterday.

a) help

b) helping

c) helped

⑦ This is my sister ..... name is Lama.

a) His

b) My

c) Her

⑧ Tamer ..... the piano now.

a) play

b) played

c) is playing

**5 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

① what's your favorite month

.....

② we don't have school on sundays.

.....

## (A) Listening

1



Listen and number the pictures: استمع وارقم الصور:

5

1 sad

2 tall

3 excited

4 cousins

5 sleep



## (B) Reading

2

Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

8

(place – kind – falls – happy)

Helping people is very important. When someone needs help, we should be (1)..... and help them. For example, if a friend (2)..... down, we can help them stand up. Helping others makes us feel (3)..... . It also makes the world a better (4)..... .

## (C) Writing

3

Unscramble the words: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

5

1



cfea

2



iepnlc

3



rgadnothmer

4



pcu

5



udkc



**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

8

① We ..... our grandfather yesterday.

a) visit

b) visiting

c) visited

② I ..... my homework in the afternoon.

a) do

b) cheer

c) tidy

③ My ..... is my father's brother.

a) uncle

b) grandfather

c) cousin

④ Omar feels ..... when he wins the match.

a) bored

b) excited

c) sad

⑤ Nour ..... hard to be a great swimmer.

a) donates

b) shares

c) tries

⑥ You ..... very kind.

a) is

b) are

c) am

⑦ Hala ..... lunch yesterday.

a) cook

b) cooks

c) cooked

⑧ Look, Ali ..... fast.

a) run

b) running

c) is running

**5 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

① we can donate clothes to people

.....

② Nada and mona live in Luxor

.....

## (A) Listening

1



Listen and number the pictures:

استمع ورقم الصور:

5

1 eat

2 play

3 grandmother

4 Eid Al-Fitr

5 tower



## (B) Reading

2

Read and fill in the gaps:

اقرأ واملاً الفراغات:

8

(knee – picture – smiled – better)

One sunny day, Sara went to the city park. She drew a (1) ..... with her pencil and (2) ..... at her friend's nice face. Then, she fell and hurt her (3) ..... . Her friend helped her, and she felt (4) .....

## (C) Writing

3

Unscramble the words:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

5

1



ityc

2



teestr

3



tsrnig

4



gEytp

5



rbode



**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

8

- ① Sara is ..... She makes us laugh.  
a) angry                      b) bored                      c) funny
- ② Rana feels ..... when she sees a lion.  
a) bored                      b) happy                      c) scared
- ③ We ..... Sham El-Nessim in spring.  
a) make                      b) celebrate                      c) sing
- ④ A ..... works in a hospital.  
a) teacher                      b) driver                      c) doctor
- ⑤ The chair is ..... the desk and the table.  
a) on                      b) in                      c) between
- ⑥ Mr. Nader ..... a very friendly teacher.  
a) is                      b) are                      c) am
- ⑦ My friends ..... football now.  
a) play                      b) is playing                      c) are playing
- ⑧ My brother ..... a scary movie yesterday.  
a) watch                      b) watched                      c) watches

**5 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

- ① do you like going to the amusement park

- ② we went to the supermarket yesterday

## (A) Listening



1

Listen and number the pictures:

استمع ورقم الصور:

5

1 neck

2 aunt

3 back

4 plant

5 truck



## (B) Reading

2

Read and fill in the gaps:

اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

8

(Teamwork – donate – plant – team)

Ahmed and Rodayna want to help their neighborhood. They work as a (1) ..... First, they clean the street. Then, they (2) ..... trees near the school. After that, they (3) ..... clothes to children. (4) ..... makes the community better.

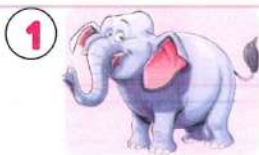
## (C) Writing

3

Unscramble the words:

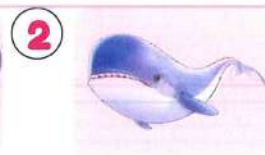
أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

5



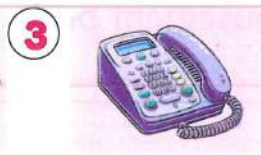
1

phelante



2

alewh



3

oneph



4

rpatiec



5

mgu



**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

6

1 I feel ..... when I lose something.

a) quiet

b) happy

c) sad

2 He is ..... and doesn't like to talk much.

a) funny

b) friendly

c) shy

3 We read books at the .....

a) library

b) garden

c) supermarket

4 My grandmother ..... me nice stories.

a) says

b) speaks

c) reads

5 The dog is ..... the tree.

a) in front

b) between

c) behind

6 Maher ..... breakfast at 8 o'clock.

a) eat

b) eats

c) are eating

7 Sara ..... at the club yesterday.

a) am

b) is

c) was

8 I have a good friend. .... name is Hassan.

a) My

b) His

c) Her

**5 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

1 we read books at the library

2 how old are you

# Tapescripts

يحتوي هذا الجزء  
على إجابات نصوص  
الاستماع الخاصة  
بالكتاب.

## Unit 1 Let's Learn Together!

### Lesson 2 Phonics Checkpoint

- ① whale    ② wheel    ③ when    ④ white

### Practice on Lesson 2

- ① what    ② where    ③ white    ④ wheel

### Unit 1 Test Yourself

- ① whale    ② white    ③ where    ④ what

### Unit 1 Al-Azhar Corner

- ① when    ② white    ③ where  
④ wheel    ⑤ whale

## Unit 2 My Family and I

### Lesson 2 Phonics Checkpoint

- ① examine    ② exam    ③ exit    ④ exercise

### Practice on Lesson 2

- ① exam    ② exit    ③ example    ④ examine

### Lesson 3 Phonics Checkpoint

- ① graph    ② photo    ③ elephant    ④ phone

### Practice on Lesson 3

- ① phone    ② photo    ③ graph    ④ alphabet

### Unit 2 Test Yourself

- ① photo    ② exam    ③ elephant    ④ exit

### Unit 2 Al-Azhar Corner

- ① Eid Al-Fitr    ② phone    ③ cousins  
④ doctor    ⑤ grandfather

### Al-Adwaa Revision - October

- A ① whale    ② elephant    ③ white    ④ what  
B ① photo    ② wheel    ③ graph    ④ exercise

## Al-Adwaa Tests - October

### Model 1

- ① examine    ② white    ③ elephant    ④ exam

### Model 2

- ① when    ② phone    ③ example    ④ what

### Model 3 Al-Azhar

- ① farmer    ② shout    ③ whale  
④ wheel    ⑤ grandmother

## Unit 3 New Adventures

### Practice on Lesson 2

- ① duck    ② sock    ③ back    ④ truck

### Unit 3 Test Yourself

- ① buzz    ② sock    ③ off  
④ well    ⑤ truck

### Unit 3 Al-Azhar Corner

- ① house    ② park    ③ library  
④ grass    ⑤ staff

## Unit 4 Let's Tell Stories!

### Lesson 1 Phonics Checkpoint

- ① cry    ② stuck    ③ cold    ④ carry

### Practice on Lesson 1

- ① cat    ② licked    ③ coat    ④ cup

### Lesson 2 Phonics Checkpoint

- ① face    ② city    ③ cent    ④ pencil

### Practice on Lesson 2

- ① nice    ② fence    ③ ice    ④ face



## Unit 4 Test Yourself

- ① city      ② cup      ③ cent      ④ cat

## Unit 4 Al-Azhar Corner

- ① tired      ② fence      ③ coat  
④ bored      ⑤ angry

## Al-Adwaa Revision - November

- A ① city      ② buzz      ③ nice      ④ truck  
B ① cat      ② miss      ③ duck      ④ bell

## Al-Adwaa Tests - November

### Model 1

- ① cuff      ② sock      ③ less      ④ nice

### Model 2

- ① off      ② cent      ③ miss      ④ truck

### Model 3 Al-Azhar

- ① supermarket      ② train station  
③ truck      ④ happy      ⑤ cup

## Unit 5 Together is Better

### Lesson 2 Phonics Checkpoint

- ① big      ② dog      ③ green      ④ gum

### Practice on Lesson 2

- ① gum      ② dog      ③ good      ④ green

### Lesson 3 Phonics Checkpoint

- ① Egypt      ② giraffe      ③ huge      ④ page

### Practice on Lesson 3

- ① giraffe      ② Egypt      ③ page      ④ huge

## Unit 5 Test Yourself

- ① gum      ② giraffe      ③ Egypt      ④ good

## Unit 5 Al-Azhar Corner

- ① tidy up the bed      ② dog      ③ Egypt  
④ share      ⑤ green

## Unit 6 Dare to Dream

### Lesson 2 Phonics Checkpoint

- ① spray      ② splash      ③ scratch      ④ string

### Practice on Lesson 2

- ① spring      ② split      ③ street      ④ screen

## Unit 6 Test Yourself

- ① street      ② spring      ③ screen      ④ spray

## Unit 6 Al-Azhar Corner

- ① goal      ② step      ③ practice  
④ celebrate      ⑤ reach

### General Practice on Unit 1

- A ① when      ② whale      ③ wheel  
B ① white      ② where      ③ what

### General Practice on Unit 2

- A ① exam      ② phone      ③ graph      ④ exercise  
B ① example      ② photo      ③ exist      ④ elephant

### General Practice on Unit 3

- A ① grass      ② tell      ③ truck      ④ neck  
B ① bell      ② off      ③ sock      ④ jazz

### General Practice on Unit 4

- A ① came      ② nice      ③ carry      ④ cut  
B ① cold      ② pencil      ③ city      ④ face

### General Practice on Unit 5

- A ① dog      ② giraffe      ③ page      ④ gum  
B ① Egypt      ② big      ③ good      ④ huge

### General Practice on Unit 6

- A ① spray      ② string      ③ split      ④ screen  
B ① street      ② scratch      ③ splash      ④ spring

## Final Tests

### Test 1

- ① whale      ② grass      ③ exam      ④ phone

### Test 2

- ① giraffe      ② pencil      ③ example      ④ good

### Test 3

- ① spray      ② face      ③ sock      ④ exit

### Test 4

- ① splash      ② cuff      ③ sock      ④ white

### Test 5

- ① pull      ② staff      ③ alphabet      ④ miss

### Test 6

- ① when      ② exam      ③ green      ④ phone

### Test 7

- ① spring      ② pull      ③ off      ④ coat

### Test 8

- ① photo      ② well      ③ gum      ④ huge

### Test 9

- ① cat      ② nice      ③ duck      ④ pull

### Test 10

- ① what      ② buzz      ③ bell      ④ photo

### Test 11

- ① graph      ② wheel      ③ off      ④ exist

### Test 12

- ① carry      ② less      ③ pull      ④ jazz

### Test 13

- ① buzz      ② city      ③ when      ④ elephant

### Test 14

- ① tell      ② truck      ③ string      ④ street

### Test 15

- ① sock      ② alphabet      ③ exercise      ④ off

## Al-Azhar Tests

### Test 1

- ① train station      ② library      ③ pilot

- ④ farmer      ⑤ grandfather

### Test 2

- ① cake      ② screen      ③ cup

- ④ bike      ⑤ car

### Test 3

- ① sad      ② tall      ③ excited

- ④ cousins      ⑤ sleep

### Test 4

- ① eat      ② play      ③ grandmother

- ④ Eid Al-Fitr      ⑤ tower

### Test 5

- ① neck      ② aunt      ③ back

- ④ plant      ⑤ truck



# Writing Answers

## Unit 1 Let's Learn Together!

### Lesson 1

#### My new friend

I met a new friend yesterday. His name is Omar. He is ten years old and very kind to everyone.

### Lesson 2

#### Classroom rules

In our classroom, we raise our hands, sit down quietly, and keep our desks clean to learn better together.

### Lesson 3

#### Describe your friend

My friend is kind and tall. He is always helpful to everyone and he always tells jokes and helps his friends.

### Lesson 4

#### My daily routine

I wake up early every morning, go to school to learn new things, and play with my friends after class.

### Test Yourself

#### My sister's daily routine

My sister wakes up early, brushes her teeth, and eats breakfast. She likes starting her day fresh, clean, and happy.

## Unit 2 My Family and I

### Lesson 2

#### Your favorite celebration

My favorite celebration is Eid Al-Fitr. I wear new clothes, visit my family, eat tasty food, and feel very happy.

### Lesson 3

#### How your family helps you

I love my family. My father takes me to school. Mom makes me food to eat. I play with my brother.

### Lesson 4

#### Jobs in my family

My family has different jobs. My mother is a teacher at a school. My father is a doctor in a hospital.

### Test Yourself

#### 6<sup>th</sup> of October

My favorite celebration is 6<sup>th</sup> of October. It reminds us how brave the Egyptian soldiers are.

## Unit 3 New Adventures

### Lesson 1

#### Your busy day

This morning, Ali and his mom went shopping at the supermarket. They passed the train station and saw a big train. It was fun.

### Lesson 2

#### Your last holiday

Last holiday, I visited the library to read about the Pyramids. I went with my family. We took many pictures there. I was very happy. It was the best holiday.

### Lesson 3

#### Your lost toy car

I lost my toy car. I looked under the bed, behind the chair, but it wasn't there. I found it front of the couch.

### Lesson 4

#### A day at the zoo

On Friday, we went to the zoo by bus. I felt happy to see lions, monkeys, and colorful birds everywhere.

**Test Yourself**  
**My weekend**

My family went to the park last weekend. We played games, enjoyed the fresh air, and took many beautiful pictures.

**Unit 4 Let's Tell Stories!**

**Lesson 2**  
**My visit to the zoo**

I visited the zoo and saw many animals. I felt amazed by the lions and monkeys. I was very excited.

**Lesson 3**  
**A football match**

We played a football match yesterday. I scored a goal for my team, and we won the game happily together.

**Test Yourself**  
**My birthday**

On my birthday, I felt very excited. My friends came to celebrate, and I got a wonderful gift from my parents.

**Unit 5 Together is Better**

**Lesson 2**  
**Teamwork at school**

We worked on a school project together. We had to agree on ideas. We felt tired, but we finished it happily.

**Lesson 3**  
**Teamwork at sports**

At school, we played a football match. I helped my team score goals, and we all enjoyed working together.

**Lesson 4**  
**We help our neighborhood**

My friends and I worked together as a team to help our neighborhood. We cleaned the street, planted flowers, and made the area look beautiful.

**Test Yourself**  
**I help at home**

First, I cleaned my room. Then, I helped my mom wash the dishes. I felt proud to help at home.

**Unit 6 Dare to Dream**

**Lesson 1**  
**Your dream**

My dream is to be a football player. I practice every day. My goal is to win.

**Lesson 2**  
**Riding a bike**

I want to learn to ride a bike. I practice every afternoon in the garden until I can ride well.

**Lesson 3**  
**A great day**

I got full marks on my test. My parents were proud. We celebrate at home happily.

**Lesson 4**  
**Helping friends**

On Saturday, I helped my friends with swimming. They learned quickly, and we all felt happy enjoying our time together.

**Test Yourself**  
**Your goal**

My goal is to be better at swimming. I train hard to get better. My family is proud of me. I want to reach my goal.



# Dictation Copybook

كراسة تسميع الكلمات





## Unit 1 Dictation

### Lesson 1

|       |              |       |              |
|-------|--------------|-------|--------------|
| ..... | أهلاً        | ..... | صباح الخير   |
| ..... | سعيد بلقائك. | ..... | أراك لاحقاً! |
| ..... | شكراً لك     | ..... | إلى اللقاء!  |
| ..... | رائع         | ..... | مصر          |
| ..... | يري          | ..... | يقابل        |

### Lesson 2

|       |          |       |                     |
|-------|----------|-------|---------------------|
| ..... | ارفع يدك | ..... | استمع جيداً.        |
| ..... | كن عطوف  | ..... | اجلس.               |
| ..... | لا تصرخ  | ..... | حافظ على نظافة فصلك |
| ..... | حوت      | ..... | ما/ ماذا            |
| ..... | إطار     | ..... | متى                 |
| ..... | ابيض     | ..... | أين                 |

### Lesson 3

|       |         |       |             |
|-------|---------|-------|-------------|
| ..... | طويل    | ..... | قصير        |
| ..... | شعر بني | ..... | شعر ناعم    |
| ..... | خجول    | ..... | شعر متموج   |
| ..... | عطوف    | ..... | مضحك        |
| ..... | مساعد   | ..... | مؤدب        |
| ..... | ودود    | ..... | الرف العلوي |

### Lessons 4 and 5

|       |                     |       |               |
|-------|---------------------|-------|---------------|
| ..... | تتناول الإفطار      | ..... | تستيقظ        |
| ..... | تذهب إلى المدرسة    | ..... | اغسل أسناني   |
| ..... | أؤدي الواجب المنزلي | ..... | ترتدي ملابسها |
| ..... | يقرأ                | ..... | ارتب سريرى    |
| ..... | يشاهد التلفاز       | ..... | امشط شعري     |



### Lesson 1

|       |     |       |                    |
|-------|-----|-------|--------------------|
| ..... | أب  | ..... | جد                 |
| ..... | أم  | ..... | عم / خال           |
| ..... | أخت | ..... | عمة / خالة         |
| ..... | أخ  | ..... | أبناء العم / الخال |
| ..... | جدة | ..... | أفراد العائلة      |
| ..... | ثقل | ..... | طالب               |

### Lesson 2

|       |                      |       |                |
|-------|----------------------|-------|----------------|
| ..... | عيد الفطر            | ..... | عيد شم النسيم  |
| ..... | احتفال               | ..... | مفضل           |
| ..... | عيد السادس من أكتوبر | ..... | عيد الأم       |
| ..... | جنود                 | ..... | شجاع           |
| ..... | سمك مملح             | ..... | حديقة          |
| ..... | اختبار               | ..... | يتواجد         |
| ..... | مخرج                 | ..... | يتدرب / يتمرّن |
| ..... | مثال                 | ..... | يفحص           |

### Lesson 3

|       |                |       |           |
|-------|----------------|-------|-----------|
| ..... | يطبخ           | ..... | يأخذ      |
| ..... | يقرأ           | ..... | يساعد     |
| ..... | قصة            | ..... | طعام      |
| ..... | الواجب المنزلي | ..... | مدرسة     |
| ..... | وجبة الغداء    | ..... | كل يوم    |
| ..... | صورة           | ..... | هاتف      |
| ..... | حروف الهجاء    | ..... | رسم بياني |

### Lessons 4 and 5

|       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| ..... | مزارع | ..... | طبيبة |
| ..... | خباز  | ..... | معلم  |
| ..... | مرضى  | ..... | طيار  |
| ..... | لذيذ  | ..... | خبز   |

### Lesson 1

|       |            |       |               |
|-------|------------|-------|---------------|
| ..... | منزل       | ..... | مبكرًا        |
| ..... | مكتبة عامة | ..... | التسوق        |
| ..... | سوبر ماركت | ..... | قطار          |
| ..... | حديقة عامة | ..... | مشغول / مزدحم |
| ..... | محطة قطار  | ..... | في الصباح     |
| ..... | متحف       | ..... | في الظهيرة    |
| ..... | جرس        | ..... | كم القميص     |
| ..... | حشائش      | ..... | فريق عمل      |
| ..... | يسحب/ يجر  | ..... | وير           |

### Lesson 2

|       |                |       |                  |
|-------|----------------|-------|------------------|
| ..... | أهرامات الجيزة | ..... | برج القاهرة      |
| ..... | كل             | ..... | مكتبة الإسكندرية |
| ..... | عظيم           | ..... | جمل              |
| ..... | أجازة          | ..... | مغامرة           |
| ..... | يكشف           | ..... | مدينة            |
| ..... | جورب           | ..... | ظهر              |
| ..... | رقبة           | ..... | شاحنة كبيرة      |

### Lesson 3

|       |              |       |            |
|-------|--------------|-------|------------|
| ..... | تحت          | ..... | على        |
| ..... | بين          | ..... | خلف        |
| ..... | في / بداخل   | ..... | إمام       |
| ..... | غرفة         | ..... | سيارة لعبة |
| ..... | كنبة / أريكة | ..... | ستارة      |
| ..... | سعيد         | ..... | عصا        |
| ..... | منضدة        | ..... | عالق       |

### Lessons 4 and 5

|       |             |       |            |
|-------|-------------|-------|------------|
| ..... | طلاب        | ..... | صف دراسي   |
| ..... | حديقة حيوان | ..... | رحلة قصيرة |
| ..... | قروود       | ..... | أسود       |
| ..... | تذكرة       | ..... | ساندويتشات |
| ..... | رقائق بطاطس | ..... | عصير       |



### Lesson 1

|       |             |       |             |
|-------|-------------|-------|-------------|
| ..... | سعيد        | ..... | يشعر بالملل |
| ..... | حزين        | ..... | خائف        |
| ..... | متحمس       | ..... | متعب        |
| ..... | غاضب        | ..... | فريق        |
| ..... | خجول        | ..... | فخور        |
| ..... | سياج (سور)  | ..... | حفرة        |
| ..... | معطف/ بالطو | ..... | لعت         |
| ..... | صوت         | ..... | حر (طليق)   |
| ..... | لأن         | ..... | قريبًا      |
| ..... | ينقذ        | ..... | يتبع        |
| ..... | يمسك        | ..... | يلتصق       |
| ..... | يسمع        | ..... | يقفز        |

### Lesson 2

|       |          |       |              |
|-------|----------|-------|--------------|
| ..... | يوم مشمس | ..... | يشعر بالتحسن |
| ..... | مرة أخرى | ..... | وجه          |
| ..... | ركبة     | ..... | ثلج          |
| ..... | الان     | ..... | رائع         |
| ..... | مدينة    | ..... | قلم رصاص     |

### Lessons 3

|       |                |       |       |
|-------|----------------|-------|-------|
| ..... | متوتر          | ..... | قلق   |
| ..... | عندما          | ..... | هدف   |
| ..... | قبل            | ..... | أخطاء |
| ..... | مباراة كرة قدم | ..... | نفسه  |
| ..... | بعد            | ..... | يسجل  |

### Lesson 1

|       |              |       |               |
|-------|--------------|-------|---------------|
| ..... | ينظف         | ..... | يرتب السرير   |
| ..... | يهتم         | ..... | يشارك         |
| ..... | يهتف / يشجع  | ..... | يفوز          |
| ..... | يتبرع        | ..... | يزرع          |
| ..... | أعمال منزلية | ..... | العمل الجماعي |
| ..... | مباراة       | ..... | أرضيه         |

### Lesson 2

|       |             |       |          |
|-------|-------------|-------|----------|
| ..... | خشب         | ..... | نباتات   |
| ..... | يهز         | ..... | بركة ماء |
| ..... | يجد         | ..... | كوبرى    |
| ..... | يأتى        | ..... | قطعة من  |
| ..... | لبان (علكة) | ..... | ذيل      |
| ..... | مشروع       | ..... | أفكار    |
| ..... | أهتمام      | ..... | يوضح     |

### Lesson 3

|       |            |       |             |
|-------|------------|-------|-------------|
| ..... | مدرب       | ..... | ممتع        |
| ..... | يحرز هدفًا | ..... | عادل / منصف |
| ..... | زرافة      | ..... | يمرر الكرة  |
| ..... | صفحة       | ..... | ضخم         |

### Lessons 4 and 5

|       |       |       |           |
|-------|-------|-------|-----------|
| ..... | مجتمع | ..... | بالقرب من |
| ..... | مكتبة | ..... | زهور      |
| ..... | ألعاب | ..... | حى        |
| ..... | أطفال | ..... | شارع      |



## Lesson 1

|       |        |       |               |
|-------|--------|-------|---------------|
| ..... | هدف    | ..... | يحاول         |
| ..... | يخطط   | ..... | خطوة          |
| ..... | يحتفل  | ..... | يتدرب / يمارس |
| ..... | يصل    | ..... | النجاح        |
| ..... | طين    | ..... | يتحسن         |
| ..... | كل يوم | ..... | أصدقاء        |

## Lesson 2

|       |               |       |             |
|-------|---------------|-------|-------------|
| ..... | بالخارج       | ..... | فصل الربيع  |
| ..... | حديقة المنزل  | ..... | طرطشة / ضجة |
| ..... | يرش           | ..... | سريع        |
| ..... | صخرة          | ..... | كارتون      |
| ..... | شاشة          | ..... | دراجة       |
| ..... | دواسات / بدال | ..... | خيـط        |
| ..... | ممر           | ..... | أقدام       |

## Lesson 3

|       |              |       |                   |
|-------|--------------|-------|-------------------|
| ..... | رياضيات      | ..... | اختبار            |
| ..... | عصبى / متوتر | ..... | سؤال              |
| ..... | معلم / معلمة | ..... | لاحقًا / فيما بعد |
| ..... | أحسنـت       | ..... | الدرجة النهائية   |
| ..... | عظيم         | ..... | يذاكر             |

## Lessons 4 and 5

|       |              |       |              |
|-------|--------------|-------|--------------|
| ..... | ذات يوم      | ..... | فناء المدرسة |
| ..... | معًا / سوياً | ..... | سباق         |
| ..... | نجاح         | ..... | كلًا من      |
| ..... | يستعد        | ..... | هتافات       |